

IBM eServer iSeries Migration

A Guide to Upgrades and Migrations to IBM System i5

Understand the considerations for upgrades to IBM System i5 in i5/OS V5R4

Learn how TS1120 hardware-based tape encryption works with i5/0S

Review Thin Console support for low-end System i5 without an HMC

> Nick Harris Michael Bird Caroline Verellen

Redbooks

ibm.com/redbooks



International Technical Support Organization

IBM eServer iSeries Migration: A Guide to Upgrades and Migrations to IBM System i5

August 2007

Note: Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page vii.

Second Edition (August 2007)

This edition applies to Version 5, Release 4, Modification 0 of i5/OS.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2005, 2007. All rights reserved. Note to U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights -- Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

| Notices | . vii |
|---|-------|
| Trademarks | viii |
| Preface | . ix |
| The team that wrote this IBM Redbook | . ix |
| Become a published author | x |
| Comments welcome | X |
| | |
| Chapter 1. Planning for upgrades to System i5 hardware | . 1 |
| 1.1 Planning fundamentals | . 2 |
| 1.1.1 Presales planning | . 2 |
| 1.1.2 Postsales planning | . 5 |
| 1.2 Migration towers and SPD hardware | . 7 |
| 1.2.1 SPD features and their replacements | . 7 |
| 1.2.2 SPD features that can be converted to PCI | 12 |
| 1.3 Disk migration | 12 |
| 1.3.1 Redundant Array of Independent Disks arrangements | 13 |
| 1.4 Physical planning | 16 |
| 1.5 Linux migration | 23 |
| 1.5.1 Migrating a Linux logical partition from iSeries | 24 |
| 1.6 Windows migration | 24 |
| 1.6.1 Moving the Integrated xSeries Adapter or Integrated xSeries Server from | ~ 4 |
| | 24 |
| 1.7 IBM AIX 5L migration | 24 |
| | 25 |
| Chapter 2. Migration examples | 33 |
| 2.1 General upgrade considerations | 34 |
| 2.1.1 Side-by-side upgrade and data migration using the side-by-side method | 35 |
| 2.1.2 Data migration using the side-by-side method (source system in the previous | |
| release) | 36 |
| 2.1.3 Upgrade using unload/reload | 37 |
| 2.1.4 Upgrade with converted or relocated disks | 38 |
| 2.1.5 Upgrade with load source migration | 39 |
| 2.2 Migration examples | 40 |
| 2.2.1 Model 810 to model 520 (or 525, 550) with no LPAR | 40 |
| 2.2.2 Model 820 with tower to model 520 (525, 550) with no LPAR | 42 |
| 2.2.3 Model 640 to model 520 (or 525, 550) no LPAR. | 43 |
| 2.2.4 Model 720 to model 520 (or 525, 550) | 44 |
| 2.2.5 Model 840 to model 570 (system upgrade with no LPAR or Hardware | |
| Management Console) | 45 |
| Chapter 3 System i5 disk at i5/OS V5B4 | 51 |
| 3.1 Introducing the System i5 disk technology | 52 |
| 3.2 Disk types (speeds and feeds) | 52 |
| 3.3 Disk packaging | 52 |
| 3.3.1 System i 515. 525. 520. and 550 | 52 |
| 3.3.2 System i 570 | 52 |
| 3.3.3 System i 595 | 52 |
| | |

| 3.3.4 I/O expansion | 52 |
|--|-------|
| 3.4 Disk protection types | 53 |
| 3.4.1 RAID-5 vs RAID-6 | . 55 |
| 3.4.2 Considerations when planning disk protection | 56 |
| 3.4.3 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk with iSeries Navigator | . 64 |
| 3.4.4 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk using dedicated service tools | . 66 |
| 3.4.5 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk using system service tools | . 68 |
| 3.4.6 Migrating to RAID-6 from mirrored | 68 |
| 3.4.7 Migrating to RAID-6 from RAID-5 protected | 68 |
| 3.5 Load source migration. | 69 |
| 3.5.1 Considerations for load source migration | 69 |
| 3.5.2 Load source migration: No disk protection | 70 |
| 3.5.3 Load source migration: Mirrored system. | 75 |
| 3.5.4 Load source migration: RAID system | 85 |
| 3.5.5 RAID-5 arrangement on Peripheral Component Interconnect-X I/O adapters . | . 86 |
| Chapter 4. System i5 consoles in i5/OS V5R4 | . 89 |
| 4.1 Introduction to the consoles on System i5 servers | . 90 |
| 4.1.1 Twinax console | . 90 |
| 4.1.2 Operations console (direct-attached or LAN-attached) | 90 |
| 4.1.3 The Hardware Management Console | 90 |
| 4.2 Thin Console | 97 |
| 4.2.1 Thin Console installation | 97 |
| 4.2.2 Specifications | 97 |
| 4.2.3 Thin Console 5250 emulation screen | 98 |
| 4.2.4 Neoware Connection Manager | . 101 |
| 4.2.5 Physical installation and cabling | . 102 |
| 4.2.6 Customization settings | . 110 |
| 4.2.7 Maintenance | . 119 |
| 4.2.8 Backup/recovery and availability considerations. | . 123 |
| 4.2.9 Troubleshooting | . 124 |
| 4.3 Console card locations | . 126 |
| 4.3.1 Designated slots for models 5xx (V5R3) | . 126 |
| 4.3.2 i5/OS V5R3M5 and V5R4 (new Smart IOA plus+ models) | . 127 |
| 4.4 Changing the console type | . 127 |
| 4.4.1 Using the console service functions (65+21) | 128 |
| Chapter 5. i5/OS V5R4 software. | . 129 |
| 5.1 i5/OS V5R4 software requirements and information | . 130 |
| 5.1.1 i5/OS V5R4 informational authorized program analysis report and PSPs | . 130 |
| 5.1.2 Required software | . 131 |
| 5.1.3 AS/400 models not supported in i5/OS V5R4 | . 131 |
| 5.1.4 License agreements | . 131 |
| 5.2 i5/OS V5R4 software upgrade paths. | . 131 |
| 5.3 Interoperability with the existing systems | . 132 |
| 5.4 i5/OS V5R4 software upgrade | 132 |
| Chapter 6. Tape data encryption in i5/OS V5R4 | 137 |
| 6.1 Using the Encryption Key Manager and TS1120 tape drive | . 138 |
| 6.1.1 Encryption methods | . 138 |
| 6.1.2 Encryption components | . 139 |
| 6.1.3 Planning for tape encryption | . 140 |
| 6.1.4 Backup and recovery considerations with Encryption Key Manager | . 140 |
| 6.1.5 Encryption Key Manager server on a PC | . 142 |
| | |

| 6.1.6 Creating a keystore | 148 |
|--|-----|
| 6.2 Creating keys in your keystore | 151 |
| 6.2.1 Creating a self-signed key | 151 |
| 6.2.2 Creating a certificate request | 153 |
| 6.2.3 Importing keys from another keystore | 156 |
| 6.3 Configuring Encryption Key Manager | 159 |
| 6.3.1 Editing the properties file | 159 |
| 6.3.2 Starting the EKM Admin Console (command prompt) | 162 |
| 6.3.3 Starting and stopping the EKM server | 163 |
| 6.3.4 Adding tape drives to the EKM drive table | 163 |
| 6.4 Encryption Key Manager on i5/OS | 164 |
| 6.4.1 Software requirements | 164 |
| 6.4.2 Installing the unrestricted policy files. | 164 |
| 6.4.3 Installing the Encryption Key Manager iar and sample configuration file. | 165 |
| 6.4.4 Installing Digital Certificate Manager | 165 |
| 6.5 Creating a keystore in DCM | 167 |
| 6.5.1 Creating keys | 170 |
| 6.5.2 Creating a private/public key pair in your keystore | 173 |
| 6.5.3 Importing a key into the keystore | 175 |
| 6.5.4 Creating a local Certificate Authority-signed key in your keystore | 176 |
| 6.6 Configuring Encryption Key Manager | 180 |
| 6.6.1 Editing the properties file | 180 |
| 6.6.2 Starting the EKM Admin Console (command prompt) | 181 |
| 6.6.3. Starting and stopping the EKM server | 183 |
| 6.6.4 Adding the tape drives to the EKM drive table | 183 |
| 6.7 Configuring your TS1120 tape drive for encryption | 184 |
| 6.7.1 Defining the keystores to be used by the TS3500 | 18/ |
| 6.7.2 Enabling your tape drive for energy tion | 199 |
| 6.7.2 Enabling your tape drive for encryption | 100 |
| 6.7.4 Bekeving an encrypted cartridge for use by another company | 102 |
| 0.7.4 Rekeying an encrypted cannuge for use by another company | 195 |
| Related publications | 195 |
| IBM Bedbooks | 195 |
| Other publications | 195 |
| Online resources | 195 |
| How to get IBM Bedbooks | 196 |
| Help from IBM | 196 |
| | 100 |
| Index | 197 |



Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

| AIX 5L™ | |
|----------|--|
| AIX® | |
| AS/400e™ | |
| AS/400® | |
| Domino® | |
| eServer™ | |
| IBM® | |
| iSeries® | |
| i5/OS® | |

Lotus® OS/400® **PowerPC®** POWER™ POWER5™ **Redbooks®** Redbooks (logo) 🔗 🛽 System i™ System i5™

System p™ System x[™] System Storage™ Tivoli® **TotalStorage®** WebSphere® xSeries® zSeries® 1350™

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Java, JDK, JRE, JVM, J2SE, Sun Java, Ultra, and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft., Windows Server., Windows., and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel, Itanium, Intel logo, Intel Inside logo, and Intel Centrino logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States, other countries, or both.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Preface

Planning an upgrade from an existing IBM® AS/400e[™] or IBM eServer[™] iSeries® server to a new model IBM System i5[™] can range from a very simple disk migration to a complex task involving many components and OS upgrade steps. This IBM Redbook discusses the various topics that are involved in migrating to the new Peripheral Component Interconnect-X (PCI-X) and IBM POWER5[™] processor technology.

Upgrade scenarios are included to assist your planning.

IBM i5/OS® V5R4 contains additional components, functions, and features, which this book discusses. The new features include the new Thin Console support for the IBM System i5 low-end system. This book also discusses the new hardware-based tape encryption that is available with i5/OS V5R4 and the IBM TotalStorage® TS1120 tape drive.

Whether you are an IBM Field Technical Support Specialist, business partner, or client, this book offers the guidance you require to plan your upgrade or migration to a new IBM System i5 system.

The team that wrote this IBM Redbook

This book was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization (ITSO), Poughkeepsie Center.

Nick Harris is a Consulting IT Specialist for the IBM System i5 and works in the Rochester Executive Briefing Center. He spent the past nine years at the ITSO's Rochester Center. He specializes in logical partition (LPAR), iSeries hardware and software, external disk, Integrated IBM xSeries® Server for iSeries, and Linux®. He has written and taught IBM classes worldwide on IBM System i5, iSeries, and IBM AS/400® system design and server consolidation. He spent 13 years in the United Kingdom (UK) AS/400 Business, and has experience in S/36, S/38, AS/400, and iSeries servers. You can contact him at niharris@us.ibm.com.

Michael Bird is a freelance IT consultant in the UK. He has more than 20 years of experience in IT. He worked for IBM for 10 years as a Customer Engineer (CE) and in the AS/400 Support Centre. His areas of expertise include iSeries hardware migration, LPAR configuration, disaster recovery, communications and networking. He is a certified iSeries Technical Expert, Cisco Certified Network Associate (CCNA), Cisco Certified Design Associate (CCDA), and Microsoft® Certified Systems Engineer (MCSE). You can contact him at MBTechnology@BTClick.com.

Caroline Verellen is a Backup Continuity and Recovery Specialist working for IBM Global Services in Belgium and the Benelux area. She has spent five years at System i5 software support, specializing in System/Backup/Recovery, and three years at IBM Backup Continuity and Recovery Services as System Engineer, i5, where Caroline consults with System i5 customers on disaster recovery plans and recovery procedures, managed and housed high availability systems, and upgrading hardware/software (HW/SW) in a Business Continuity and Recovery Services (BC&RS) environment. You can contact her at Caroline_Verellen@be.ibm.com.

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

Sue Baker Pat Cawley Joe Gibbons Duane Grosz Mike Konkel Scott Maxson Mark Olson Brian Podrow Barb Smith Tracy Smith Allyn Walsh Geoff Warren Larry Youngren IBM Rochester

John Morganti IBM Austin

Carla Ruhl Thai Tran IBM Tucson

Tom Benjamin John Peck IBM Endicott

Become a published author

Join us for a two-week to six-week residency program! Help write an IBM Redbook dealing with specific products or solutions, while getting hands-on experience with leading-edge technologies. You will team with IBM technical professionals, Business Partners, and clients.

Your efforts will help increase product acceptance and client satisfaction. As a bonus, you will develop a network of contacts in IBM development labs, and increase your productivity and marketability.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at:

ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html

Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our IBM Redbooks® to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this or other IBM Redbooks in one of the following ways:

► Use the online **Contact us** review IBM Redbook form found at:

ibm.com/redbooks

Send your comments in an e-mail to:

redbook@us.ibm.com

► Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099 2455 South Road Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400



1

Planning for upgrades to System i5 hardware

This chapter discusses planning considerations for moving to the IBM System i[™] 515, 520, 525, 550, 570, and 595 hardware models.

The introduction of the Hardware Management Console (HMC) and the increasing integration of Linux, AIX®, and Windows® environments into System i servers results in a potentially more complex upgrade process. Subsequently, the planning process requires more attention from all parties involved — the client, the IBM Business Partners, the IBM sales team, and the IBM Customer Engineer — to ensure a successful upgrade with minimal disruption.

1.1 Planning fundamentals

Careful planning is an essential step in implementing a successful upgrade. This section deals with an overview of the planning process. This process can be applied to any upgrade.

The planning process has two distinct phases:

- Presales planning
- Postsales planning

As a general rule you should review the System i planning Web site at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/i/planning/

Also, check the support planning Web site at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/i/planning/upgrade/index.html

1.1.1 Presales planning

This section discusses the preorder tasks. Whether the order is new or an upgrade, it is recommended that the first configuration planning is performed with the IBM System Planning Tool (SPT). As yet, the SPT does not directly support upgrades, but it can be used to validate the final upgrade configuration. This is the sequence of actions:

- 1. Importing or re-creating the pre-upgrade configuration
- 2. Validating the configuration
- 3. Adding the new logical partition (LPAR) configuration and the new components, which in turn results in the final configuration

A combination of the SPT and the System Plans on the HMC allows the deployment of SPT LPAR configurations. At present, the deployment of upgrades is *not* supported.

Overview of the System Planning Tool

The SPT is a tool for designing logically partitioned System i and IBM System p[™] environments, and is the replacement for the LPAR Validation Tool (LVT). However, it can also be used for planning and documenting nonpartitioned systems.

The SPT is a browser-based tool that runs on your PC. For download and installation information, refer to Appendix A in *IBM Virtualization Engine TS7700: Tape Virtualization for System z Servers*, SG24-7312.

The graphical user interface (GUI) and the order of operations are quite different from the LVT, but its purpose is the same. The tool has help text and a link to the IBM System Hardware Information Center.

The SPT can be found at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/support/tools/systemplanningtool/

You can design new systems from the existing performance data, from the planned workloads, from the sample systems, and by using the advanced mode that lets you design the system at the component level.

SPT creates a system plan that is saved as a .sysplan file. That system plan may be just one system or it may contain multiple systems, each with a unique system name.

The output of the SPT can be used either to create a report or as an input to the IBM Configurator for e-business (e-Config) for order processing. The report function of the SPT invokes the System Plan Viewer, which has a print option. You will also be able to use the .sysplan file to automatically create and deploy partitions on an HMC.

Downloading the SPT

As is the case with the LVT, the SPT is available for download from the ibm.com Web site. A subscriber list is used to notify users when a new version is available.

The first time you download the SPT, you must use the full version that includes the required Java[™] Virtual Machine (JVM[™]) code and other support files. To download subsequent versions of the SPT, you can download the update version of the SPT. In either case, when you run the .exe file, an install wizard is initiated to guide you through the installation. An icon for the SPT is placed on your desktop when the installation is complete.

The new STP is available for download from the ibm.com support Web site:

http://www-03.ibm.com/servers/eserver/support/tools/systemplanningtool/

IBM Workload Estimator

The IBM Systems Workload Estimator (WLE) is a Web-based sizing tool for IBM System i, IBM System p, and IBM System x[™]. Use this tool to size a new system, to size an upgrade to an existing system, or to size a consolidation of several systems. The Workload Estimator enables measurement input to best reflect your current workload, and provides a variety of built-in workloads to reflect your emerging application requirements. Virtualization can be used to yield a more robust solution. The Workload Estimator provides current and growth recommendations for processor, memory, and disk that satisfy the overall client performance requirements.

The tool is currently capable of estimating the computer resources required for IBM Lotus® Domino®, IBM WebSphere® Commerce, IBM WebSphere, Web serving, and traditional workloads. The Workload Estimator projects the most current System i5 server models that meet the capacity requirements within the CPU % utilization objectives. Workload Estimator can be used alone or in conjunction with the System Planning Tool.

Workload Estimator download Web site

Download the Workload Estimator from:

http://www.ibm.com/jct01004c/systems/support/tools/estimator/index.html

Figure 1-1 on page 4 shows the Workload Estimator home page. Use the link shown in the browser window to start the download, and follow the on-screen instructions.

| ==== | Country/region [select | ct] Terms of use | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|------------------------|--|--|--|
| © | | Search | | | |
| Home Products | Services & solutions Support & downloads My account | | | | |
| | IBM Systems V | Vorkload Estimator | | | |
| IBM Systems | IBM Systems Workload Estimator | | | | |
| Why IBM Systems | IDIVI Systems Workload Estimator | | | | |
| BladeCenter | | Additional resources | | | |
| Cluster servers | The IBM Systems Workload Estimator is a web-based sizing tool for System i5™, System p5™, and System x™. You can use this tool to size a new | → IBM System i5 tools | | | |
| Mainframe | system, to size an upgrade to an existing system, or to size a consolidation | A IDM Contrar of tools | | | |
| System i5 | best reflect your current workload and provides a variety of built-in | | | | |
| OpenPower servers | workloads to reflect your emerging application requirements. Virtualization | | | | |
| Intel processor-based servers | provide current and growth recommendations for processor, memory, and disk that satisfy the overall client performance requirements. | | | | |
| UNIX servers | 🗗 Run IBM Systems Workload Estimator | | | | |
| Solutions | Run the online version of the Workload Estimator. | | | | |
| Storage | Download the IBM Systems Workload Estimator (18.8 KB) Important information on downloading | | | | |
| Support | important mormation on downloading. | | | | |
| Operating systems | Workload Estimator features | | | | |

Figure 1-1 WLE download page

Solution proposal

By discussing the client's existing server configuration and their requirements, the IBM Sales Representative or IBM Business Partner formulates a complete proposal. During this phase of the project, the baseline information about the client environment must be gathered.

During the solution proposal, use the Workload Estimator or one of the System i capacity planning tools to establish the size and the capacity of the System i server. For more information about the Workload Estimator, refer to the following Web site:

http://www-304.ibm.com/jct01004c/systems/support/tools/estimator/index.html

You must also review the information in the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center. Much of the hardware planning information for both IBM System i5 and IBM System p5 servers is now available in the Hardware Information Center at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/index.jsp

The IBM Prerequisite Web site provides you with compatibility information for hardware features. This tool helps you to plan a successful system upgrade by providing you with the prerequisite information for the features you currently have or plan to add to your system:

http://www-912.ibm.com/e_dir/eServerPrereq.nsf

If you are working with an existing System i server that has an HMC at V5R2, you can use the System Plan function to gather hardware and partition information that can be utilized for the creation of your SPT model. You will not be able to deploy the upgrade system plan unless the upgrade is to just add hardware for an additional partition. For more information about the System Planning Tool and the System Plan function of the HMC, refer to:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/support/tools/systemplanningtool/

You can also refer to the LPAR Simplification Tools Handbook, SG24-7231.

Initial e-Config output

The initial server design can be output from e-Config, which enables IBM Sales Representatives or IBM Business Partners to design a possible new server or upgrade solution. This initial plan might be an iterative process as the alternatives for components and availability options are considered. The e-Config output also leads to a discussion of whether the server configuration is suitable in terms of commercial processing workload (CPW), main storage, auxiliary storage, LAN/WAN connectivity, availability requirements, console requirements, physical dimensions, and power and cooling requirements.

During this consideration phase, both the system and application software must be considered. The new IBM System i5 models require IBM i5/OS V5R3 or later, depending on the model (that is, whether the server is partitioned). All of the logical partitions must also be at i5/OS V5R3 or later. Some functions require i5/OS V5R3M5 or i5/OS V5R4, such as initial program load (IPL) system across system area network (SAN) or input/output processor-less (IOP-less) adapter cards.

Initial plan and schedule

At this stage, the client looks at the issues described until now and, along with application considerations, at whether the proposed solution is worth pursuing. LPAR, clustering, and high availability solutions might form a part of the planning at this stage.

The result of these activities is an initial plan and schedule for the upgrade. Physical planning is one part of the process that is performed at this stage (dimensions, power and cooling requirements, LAN/WAN connectivity, and so on). The plan must identify all activities that are required to move from the client's current server to the proposed server; for example, a software upgrade is most likely to be required.

Depending on the vintage of the current server, it is possible that there is hardware to be removed from the current server prior to the main upgrade, and so on. This results in a multipart upgrade where hardware is removed or added at different stages. The final stage is to replace the existing central electronic complex (CEC) with a new one and any hardware not already installed. No SPD (system product division) hardware may be attached to a System i5.

Final e-Config output and order

Subsequent to the activities described until now, the solution proposal might require refinement. This refinement is input into the e-Config and the upgrade order is finalized.

Order and schedule

Place the order and move to the postsales planning stage.

1.1.2 Postsales planning

This section involves planning the actual upgrade procedures.

The final e-Config output and the client requirements resulting from the presales phase give rise to a unique timeline and task list for this client's upgrade. The IBM-recommended upgrade flow is outlined. Although it is tempting to merge many of these tasks into a much shorter timeline, good project management practice involves minimizing the number of changes performed at any given time. This minimizes the possibility of failure and ensures easier problem resolution, if necessary.

Preparation for feature upgrade

If the client has hardware that is not supported at the target release of IBM OS/400®, steps must be taken to remove this hardware and, if required, replace it with functionally equivalent hardware.

Planning is required to ensure the correct positioning and functionality of this hardware.

A readiness check is advised before proceeding. If there are complex or advanced components in the configuration, the IBM Sales Representative or IBM Business Partner can run a systems assurance review. This is a checkpoint to ensure that certain advanced options have been adequately considered.

Feature upgrade

Feature upgrade can be performed by the client, an IBM Service Representative, or an IBM Business Partner, depending on the features being replaced. Instructions are included with the hardware. A feature upgrade can be as small as adding an Ethernet adapter or using concurrent maintenance, or as large as adding multiple expansion towers with many disks and adapters. Certain features might also require an upgrade to i5/OS V5R3 before they can be installed.

Resource management and preparation for software upgrade

After the first feature upgrade, the client must perform some hardware resource management, cleanup work, and testing to ensure that all required functions are working correctly. Also, in this stage, the preparation work for the OS/400 software upgrade is performed. A readiness check is recommended before proceeding.

Software upgrade

The i5/OS upgrade is a client responsibility, unless it is contracted to IBM or an IBM Business Partner. A test environment must be available to create a version of the system and its applications. Ideally, this would be on an i5 server to ensure that there are no hardware interactions that could hamper the actual upgrade. However, it is possible to test the i5/OS V5R3 software on any older iSeries server that supports V5R3. This could be a 7xx or 8xx model. i5/OS V5R4 can also be installed on 5xx or 8xx models if the system or LPAR has a 17 GB load source drive.

This enables system and application function testing, but not volume testing. If the system that is to be migrated has critical applications, consider making a trip to the IBM Rochester Benchmark Center. Here, you can test both the function and the capacity on an i5 server, even before you place an order. The Benchmark Center is a fee-based offering. For more information, refer to the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/benchmark/cbc/index.html

We appreciate the cost involved, but it is often well worth the investment. For example, if you are planning to spend \$150,000 on a server, it would be a small investment to spend \$15k - \$20k on a benchmark test. You will also benefit from access to the new software and hardware, plus getting the additional benefit of skills transfer to key client staff.

Stabilization and preparation for the server model upgrade

After the OS/400 upgrade, the client must allow the server the time to stabilize at the new release, allowing time for any OS/400 or application issues to be identified and resolved before proceeding further.

During this stage, the client also plans the upgrade to the server. Physical planning (position, weight, power and cooling requirements, and so on) is performed. LPAR configuration might require resources to be moved from their shipped location. Disk migration might result in data migration and disk reconfiguration prior to upgrade. The client must save the LPAR configuration from the iSeries Navigator to a diskette for later loading on the HMC or manually keying in the LPAR configuration into the HMC.

A readiness check is required before proceeding further.

System model upgrade

The client hands over all of this information to the IBM customer engineer (CE), who performs the miscellaneous equipment specification (MES) upgrade. It is vital that the client has actually performed the critical planning stages outlined earlier. The client might begin to set up the HMC in a stand-alone setting (that is, not plugged into the server).

Resource management and production

After the new server is powered on, the CE connects the HMC. The client loads the saved LPAR configuration from the diskette, using the LPAR migration utility. The CE applies the partition profiles created by the LPAR migration tool to the server where the partitions are created. The CE then returns the server to the client, who performs hardware resource management activities and tests the server before moving to production.

Any new applications are installed at this stage by the client, an IBM Business Partner, or an application vendor.

1.2 Migration towers and SPD hardware

This section discusses the migration towers and SPD hardware that might already exist on the 8xx server to be upgraded. These hardware resources are not supported on the new 5xx servers. The client must prepare a replacement strategy.

A migration tower (#5034, #5035, or #5077) is essentially a 7xx installed system unit converted to a tower. This conversion enables the client to retain some of their existing SPD and older Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) hardware upon upgrade to a model 8xx (models 810, 825, 870, and 890 only), thus leveraging their existing investment. When converted into a migration tower, the new tower connects to the system unit using a high-speed link (HSL). The existing SPD towers can be attached through a migration tower.

SPD hardware, including migration towers, is not supported on iSeries model 5xx. As part of the planning process, you must remove all existing SPD hardware before or during the upgrade, and sufficient resources must be available in the upgraded system to perform the function of the removed hardware. When planning the change from SPD to PCI features, some PCI replacements have differing functions and requirements that you might have to address; for example, the fax adaptor requires reconfiguring, and might have implications for any fax applications you use. Some resources have no PCI alternative, for example, #6141 American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) adaptor and #2644 channel attach tape IOP. For most tape input/output adapter (IOA) replacements, you have to change the cable or interposer that is used to connect the tape drive to the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI).

It is possible to upgrade #5065 and #5066 towers to their PCI equivalents (#5074 and #5079 respectively), which gives an upgrade path from SPD and migration towers. That is, convert SPD hardware to the PCI equivalent, install in #5065/#5066 towers, and then upgrade these towers as part of the main upgrade process.

1.2.1 SPD features and their replacements

Table 1-1 on page 8 lists the existing SPD features that you might have and their possible PCI replacements.

| SPD feature code | Card description and properties | Suggested replacement PCI feature | Card description and properties |
|------------------------|--|--|---|
| 2686 | Optical link processor (266 Mbps). Used for attaching #5044. Each #2686 supports a maximum of one #5044. | HSL port | |
| 2688 | Optical link processor (1063 Mbps). Used for attaching #5065, #5072, #5073, #5082, and #5083 expansion towers. Each #2688 supports a maximum of two #50xx towers. | HSL port | |
| 2695 | Optical bus adapter. Allows for the addition of up to three #2686 or #2688 optical link processors in any combination. | HSL port | |
| 5044 | System unit expansion rack. This is a 12 SPD I/O card slot cage in a rack enclosure. | 5094, 5294, 5095, 5075, 5074, or 5079 ¹ | PCI expansion tower ¹ |
| 5052 and 5058 | Storage expansion unit. Provides space for up to 16 disk units. | 5094, 5294, 5095, 5075, 5074, or 5079 ¹ | PCI expansion tower ¹ |
| 5055 and 5057 | Storage expansion unit. Provides space for up to eight to 16 disk units. | 5094, 5294, 5095, 5075, 5074, or 5079 ¹ | PCI expansion tower ¹ |
| 5072 and 5073 | 1063 Mbps system unit expansion tower. Provides an additional bus. | 5094, 5294, 5095, 5075, 5074, or 5079 ¹ | PCI expansion tower ¹ |
| 5082 and 5083 | 1063 Mbps storage expansion tower. Provides a direct access storage device (DASD) tower for adding up to 16 disk units. | 5075, 5074, or 5079 ¹ | PCI expansion tower ¹ |
| 2629 | LAN/WAN/Workstation IOP. This supports up to three LAN/WAN/ Workstation IOAs. | 2843, 9943, or 2824 ² | PCI I/O processor that drives PCI IOA adapters |
| 6050,6140, and 6180 | Twinaxial workstation controller. One 8-port attachment is provided to support up to 40 twinaxial devices. | 2746 ² /4746 | The twinaxial workstation IOA provides support for up to 40 active twinaxial displays and printer addresses. |
| 6141 and 6142 | ASCII workstation controller. This workstation controller supports up to six ASCII devices. | N/A | |
| 2605 | Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) basic rate adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communications ports ² |
| 2609 | Electronic Industries Association (EIA) 232/V.24 two-line adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communications ports ² |

 Table 1-1
 SPD features and towers that must be replaced

| SPD feature code | Card description and properties | Suggested replacement PCI feature | Card description and properties |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| 2610,2656, and 2659 | X.21 two-line adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communications ports ² |
| 2612,2654, 2655,2657, and 2658 | EIA 232/V.24 two-line adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communication ports ² |
| 2613,6153, and 6173 | V.35 one-line adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communication ports ² |
| 2614 | X.21 one-line adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communication ports ² |
| 2620 and 2820 | Cryptographic processor | 4801 | PCI cryptographic coprocessor ³ |
| 2623 | Six-line communication controller | 2843, 9943, or 2824 ² | PCI I/O processor that drives PCI IOA adapters |
| 2664 | Integrated fax adapter | 2761 ² /4761, 2772, 2773, or 2805 | See note 10 |
| 2666 | High-speed communications adapter | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communication ports ² |
| 2699 and 9699 | Two-line WAN IOA | 2745 ² /4745 ³ | #4745 supports up to two multiple protocol communication ports ² |
| 2617 and 6181 | Ethernet/Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) 802.3 adapter | 2838 ² /4838 | PCI 100/10 Mbps Ethernet IOA |
| 2618 | Fibre distributed data interface adapter | N/A | |
| 2619,2626, and 6149 | 16/4 Mbps token ring adapter | 4744 | PCI 100/16/4 Mbps token-ring IOA |
| 2665 | Shielded twisted-pair distributed data interface adapter | N/A | |
| 2663 and 2668 | I/O attachment processor wireless LAN adapter | N/A | |
| 2810 | LAN/WAN IOP | 2843, 9943, or 2824 ² | PCI I/O processor that drives PCI IOA adapters |
| FSIOP ⁴ | Integrated PC server (IPCS) | 2790, 2791, or 2799 ⁴ | |
| 6616,6617, and 6618 | Integrated PC server | 2790/2890> 2791/2891> 2799/2899> 2792/2892⁴> | 700 MHz Integrated xSeries 850 MHz Integrated xSeries 1.0 GHz Integrated xSeries 1.6 GHz Integrated xSeries |

| SPD feature code | Card description and properties | Suggested replacement PCI feature | Card description and properties |
|---|--|--|--|
| 8664 and 8665 | Base-shielded twisted-pair distributed data interface adapter | N/A | |
| 1312, 1322, 1325, 1327, 1333, 1334, 1337, 1602, 6605, and 6652 | One-byte 1.03 GB disk unit Two-byte 1.03 GB disk unit | 4317⁵ 4318⁵ 4319⁵ 4326 4327 | 8.58 GB disk unit 10k revolutions per minute (rpm) 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 15k rpm 70.56 GB disk unit 15k rpm |
| 1313, 1323, 1326, 1336, 1603, 6606, 6650, 6806, 6906, and 9606 | One-byte 1.96 GB disk unit Two-byte 1.96 GB disk unit | 4317⁵ 4318⁵ 4319⁵ 4326⁵ 4327⁵ | 8.58 GB disk unit 10k rpm 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 15k rpm 70.56 GB disk unit 15k rpm |
| 1327, 1337, 6607, 6807, 6907, 9707, and 9907 | Two-byte 4.19 GB disk unit | ▶ 4317⁵ ▶ 4318⁵ ▶ 4319⁵ ▶ 4326⁵ ▶ 4327⁵ | 8.58 GB disk unit 10k rpm 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 15k rpm 70.56 GB disk unit 15k rpm |
| 1333,6713, 6813,8713, and 8813 | Two-byte 8.58 GB disk unit | 4317⁵ 4318⁵ 4319⁵ 4326⁵ 4327⁵ | 8.58 GB disk unit 10k rpm 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 15k rpm 70.56 GB disk unit 15k rpm |
| 1334,6714, 6824,8714, and 8824 | Two-byte 17.54 GB disk unit | ▶ 4318⁵ ▶ 4319⁵ ▶ 4326⁵ ▶ 4327⁵ | 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 10k rpm 35.16 GB disk unit 15k rpm 70.56 GB disk unit 15k rpm |
| 1349, 1379, and 6368 | 1.2 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit | 4482 or 4582 ⁶ | 4 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit |
| 1350™, 1380,6369, 6380,6381, and 6481 | 2.5 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit | 4482 or 4582 ⁶ | 4 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit |
| 1355,6385, and 6485 | 13 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit | 4483 or 4583 ⁷ | 16 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit |
| 1360,6390, and 6490 | 7 GB 8 mm cartridge tape unit | N/A ⁸ | 8 mm cartridges are supported only through external 7208 devices ⁸ |
| 6325 and 6425 | Optional CD-ROM feature | 4425 or 4525 | CD-ROM device |
| 2621 | Removable media device attachment | 2729 ² or 2749 | PCI Ultra™ magnetic media controller |
| 2624 | Storage device controller | ▶ 2748², 4748, 9748⁹, ▶ 2778², 4778, or 9778⁹ | PCI Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) disk unit controller |

| SPD feature code | Card description and properties | Suggested replacement PCI feature | Card description and properties |
|--|---|--|--|
| 2644 | 34xx magnetic tape subsystem attachment | N/A | All the devices that are attached to the 2644 IOP are not supported on V5R2. |
| 6112 | Magnetic storage device controller | N/A | All the devices that are attached to the 6112 IOP are not supported on V5R2. |
| 6146 | Diskette adapter | N/A | All the devices that are attached to the 6146 IOP are not supported on V5R2. |
| 6500 | DASD controller | N/A | All the devices that are attached to the 6500 IOP are not supported on V5R2. |
| 6501 | Tape/Disk device controller | ▶ 2729² or 2749 ▶ 2765¹¹ or 2766¹¹ | PCI magnetic media controller Fibre Channel (FC) tape and disk controllers |
| 6502, 6512, 6530, 6532, and 6533 | RAID disk unit controller | ▶ 2748², 4748, or 9748⁹ ▶ 2778², 4778 or 9778⁹, ▶ 2757⁹ or 2782⁹ | PCI RAID disk unit controller and PCI-X RAID disk controllers |
| 6513 | Internal tape device controller | 2748², 4748, or 9748⁹ 2778², 4778, 9778⁹, 2757⁹, or 2782⁹ | PCI RAID disk unit controller and PCI-X RAID disk unit controller |
| 6534 | Magnetic media controller | 2729 ² , 2749, or 2768 | PCI magnetic media controller |

1: In contrast to SPD towers that have either disk space or IOA/IOP slots and limited disk space, HSL towers feature IOP/IOA slots and disk slots in greater quantity than the existing SPD towers. Therefore, depending on the type of SPD towers you are replacing, you have multiple choices for HSL towers.

2: If you are planning on migrating SPD features and towers to 5065 or 5066 before doing an upgrade to an 8xx system, you must use the SPD/PCI features that can reside only in 5065 or 5066 towers.

3: #2745/4745 support up to two multiple protocol communications ports when one or two (in any combination) of the following cables are attached:

- #0348 V.24/EIA232 20 ft PCI cable
- #0349 V.24/EIA232 50 ft PCI cable
- #0353 V.35 20 ft PCI cable
- #0354 V.35 50 ft PCI cable
- #0355 V.35 80 ft PCI cable
- #0356 V.36 20 ft PCI cable
- #0358 V.36 150 ft PCI cable
- #0359 X.21 20 ft PCI cable
- #0360 X.21 50 ft PCI cable
- #0365 V.24/EIA232 80 ft PCI cable
- #0367 Operations Console Cable

4: The Integrated PC Server (IPCS) (earlier known as FSIOP) might be shown as feature #6517, #6518, #6519, #6526, #6527, #6528, or #6529. All FSIOP and 6616 IPCS are no longer supported on V5R1. If you are using an 6617 or 6618 IPCS and planning on moving from SPD

to PCI, the 2790/2890, 2791, 2891, 2799/2899, and 2792/2892 replacement Integrated xSeries Server can only reside in 5074, 5075, or 5079 towers, 270, or 8xx systems. (Some Integrated xSeries Servers are model-dependant.) The new Enterprise Edition Servers ship with an Integrated IBM eServer zSeries® including 9792. There are also Windows considerations to be met when upgrading an Integrated PC Server.

5: All 1.03 GB, 1.96 GB, and 4.19 GB disks are not supported in any 270, 8xx servers, or 5065/5066, 5074/5079/5075, or 5094/5294/5095 towers.

6: 1.2 GB and 2.5 GB ¼-inch cartridges can be read/write on 4482/4582 4 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape units.

7: 13 GB ¼-inch cartridge can be read/write on a 4483/4583 16 GB ¼-inch cartridge tape unit.
8: Internal 8 mm cartridge tape units are no longer supported on 270 or 8xx systems. The alternative is to use an external 7208 tape device.

9: FC2748/4748/9748 are supported by V4R5/V5R1. FC2778/4778/9778 are supported by V5R1 and V5R2. FC2757 and 2782 are supported by V5R2 (February 2003 level).

10: There are numerous fax options for PCI alternatives to the SPD 2664 Integrated FAX Adapter. Refer to the system handbook for alternatives.

11: If the 6501 is being used to attach to an external tape/disk device, it is common for this adapter to be replaced with a 2765 Fibre Channel Tape Adapter or a 2766 Fibre Channel Disk Adapter.

1.2.2 SPD features that can be converted to PCI

Table 1-2 shows the SPD features (disks and towers) that can be converted to PCI.

Note: The client must check the cost of migrating, for example, disks, against the cost of new drives with faster and higher capacities.

| SPD features/ towers | Description | PCI/HSL feature conversion | How to convert them to PCI/HSL | PCI tower that will support them |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| 6717, 6817, 8617, and 8817 | 8.58 GB disk unit 10k rpm | 4317 | Request for price quotation (RPQ) 847102 or through the configurator | 5065, 5066, ¹ 5074, and 5079 |
| 6718, 6818 8618, and 8818 | 17.54 GB disk unit 10k rpm | 4318 | RPQ 847102 or through the configurator | 5065, 5066, ¹ 5074, and 5079 |
| 5065 | Storage/PCI expansion unit | 5074 | Through the configurator | |
| 5066 | 1.8 m Storage/PCI expansion unit | 5079 | Through the configurator | |

 Table 1-2
 LSPD features that can be converted to PCI/HSL

1: If you are adding a new disk to an installed 8xx system, it is recommended that you also take advantage of the situation to convert the installed 10k rpm disk to 5065 or 5066 towers.

1.3 Disk migration

Disk migration to new hardware might have considerable cost savings above the purchase of new disks. However, great care must be taken when planning the movement of disks.

Consider the following factors:

- ► Disks with capacity less than 8 GB are not supported.
- Disks of speeds less than 10k rpm are not supported.
- ► i5/OS V5R4 requires any load source drive to be at least 17 GB.
- ► Disks that are RAID protected can only be moved where the RAID set is maintained.

All disks that do not meet the first two conditions must be removed before or during the upgrade. In the case of an upgrade to i5/OS V5R4, the load source drive must be removed before the upgrade.

Special care must be taken to ensure the fourth criteria, where the RAID sets span more disks than can be physically placed on an IOP; for example, earlier expansion towers had disks in sets of 16 disks (usually two RAID sets). However, because a #5074 has disks in a set of 15 disks, one disk must be removed from the configuration and from its RAID set prior to moving the disks as a set to the #5074.

The new System i5 has fewer internal disk slots in the CEC than most 8xx servers. Therefore, the disks might have to be rearranged to enable RAID sets to be retained, and to have disks to fit in the CEC.

1.3.1 Redundant Array of Independent Disks arrangements

In i5/OS V5R4, RAID 6 capability has been introduced for some disk adapters. The client must still choose between RAID 5 or RAID 6 when the disk drives are added into the configuration. For a more detailed discussion of RAID 6, refer to Chapter 3, "System i5 disk at i5/OS V5R4" on page 51.

iSeries Navigator

The iSeries Navigator provides an alternative graphical view of the disk drives. This helps you identify the exact location of a drive from a graphical representation. The graphics truly represent the actual position of a drive unit in a tower. To access the graphical view, perform the following tasks:

1. From the iSeries Navigator main window, expand Configuration and Service (Figure 1-2).



Figure 1-2 iSeries Navigator: Configuration and Service

- 2. In the right-hand panel, expand Hardware.
- 3. Expand Disks Units.
- 4. You will be asked for a service tools ID and password when you select a resource.

Notes: Dedicated and System Service Tool IDs and passwords are *not* the same as the OS/400 user profiles and IDs.

Starting with OS/400 V5R1, service tool passwords are case-sensitive. You may also define multiple IDs, which may also have varying authority levels.

If you forget or disable your service tool IDs, they can be reset by using the command CHGDSTPWD from an OS/400 command line, using the Security Officer profile.

- 5. Figure 1-3 shows the four options that are available to you:
 - All Disks: This provides a list of all the disks on the system.
 - By Location: This provides a list of disks by tower. Right-click one of the towers to view its serial number and frame ID. This can be compared to the frame ID displayed on the tower itself.
 - Disk Pools: This enables you to view a list of disks according to auxiliary storage pool (ASP).
 - Nonconfigured Disks: This provides a list of disks found on the system, but have not yet been added to an ASP.



Figure 1-3 Configuration and Service: Disks

6. Right-click By Location and select Graphical view.

The disk graphics are "hot" and show where the disk is situated on the system, so that it can be identified easily. Right-click one of the disks and select **Properties** to see more

information about the disks, such as serial number, location, percent full, percent busy, and, most important, the unit number required by STRASPBAL. Figure 1-4 shows the pop-ups.

To review the details in each frame, right-click the frame and select **Properties**. This shows the serial number and frame ID for each frame. The frame ID information can be compared to the LED on each frame, so that you can identify each frame.



Figure 1-4 iSeries Navigator: Disk properties

You now have sufficient information to identify the disks marked for removal.

A System Rack List

A System Rack List provides useful documentation about the hardware contained in your system, including information such as hardware features, locations, and serial numbers of each resource on the system.

To obtain a System Rack List, perform the following tasks:

1. Type STRSST in the command line. The System Services Tools sign-in window is displayed. Enter your user ID and password.

Notes: Dedicated and System Service Tool IDs and passwords are not the same as the OS/400 user profiles and IDs.

Starting in V5R1 service tools passwords are case sensitive; you may also define multiple IDs.

If you forget or disable your service tools IDs, they can be reset with the command CHGDSTPWD from an OS/400 command line, using the Security Officer profile.

- 2. In the System Service Tools main menu, select:
 - a. Type 1 Start a service tool
 - b. Type 7 Hardware Service Manager
 - c. Select F6 Print configuration
- 3. Some print format options are presented. If your printer allows it, use 132 characters-wide, and press Enter.
- 4. A spool file is submitted to the service printer. Usually, this is a QPRINT output queue.

You now have a printout of the hardware on your system that can be used to help identify the disk units on your system and their location.

1.4 Physical planning

For detailed specifications, refer to the physical planning guide or the physical planning section of the IBM eServer Hardware Information Center on the Web at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/index.jsp

The i520/i550 physical layout

Figure 1-5 shows the plan view of the i520/i550. Do not let this system intimidate you. It is very similar to the layout of a PC server. There are six Peripheral Component Interconnect-X (PCI-X) card slots and eight memory dual inline memory module (DIMM) slots. The side panel of the i520 can be removed to install and remove features. The i520 is available as a desk-side unit or a rack-mounted unit.



Figure 1-5 i520 plan view

Figure 1-6 shows the rear of the i520/550. You can see the connections for the HMC, the high-speed link (HSL), the system power control network (SPCN), local area network (LAN), and the service ports. There are also Universal Serial Bus (USB) ports. These are not usable by i5/OS. Both of the Ethernet ports are available for allocation to partitions, but cannot be used for Operation Console LAN connection. SPCN is a loop on i5 servers. Therefore, both of the ports will have a cable connected if an expansion tower is a part of the system.



Figure 1-6 i520 rear view

The front view presents you with a standard SCSI bay for an internal tape drive. There are two integrated development environment (IDE) drive bays for a DVD device. The lower bay is IDE, but it has a SCSI converter to allow connections to the i5/OS. The second or upper bay can have a DVD device that is IDE-connected.

In the control panel, there is a USB and an Ethernet port. Neither of these items is available for use by the partitions. The controls for accessing the display messages and entering the options are very similar to the current 8xx operation panel.

There are eight disk drive bays, arranged in two groups of four. With the #5709 feature, the bays P3D1 - P3D4 can run with no protection or mirroring. The #5709 feature is located behind the drill panel beneath the disk bays. This adapter can have a #6574 feature added as a daughter card. This enables these four disks to run RAID protection.

To include the other four disk bays, a #6594 feature must be added. This provides the disk bay back plane for bays P2D1 - P2D4. The protection for these disks can be RAID or mirroring. P3D1 is the first disk slot for an i5/OS load source device. The configurator forces you to put a disk in the load source position, but in a partitioned server, there is no requirement for a load source disk in the CEC.

If you want to run these disks under a separate partition, they must be driven by an IOP/IOA from one of the PCI-X slots in the CEC (Figure 1-7).



Figure 1-7 i520 front view

Table 1-3 shows the physical specifications for model 520.

Table 1-3 Model 520 physical specifications

| Model 520 | Width | Depth | Height | Weight |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Rack-mounted drawer | 437 mm | 508 mm | 178 mm | 43 kg |
| | (17.2 in) | (23 in) | (7 in) | (95 lb) |
| Stand-alone | 201 mm | 584 mm | 533 mm | 43 kg |
| server | (7.9 in) | (23 in) | (21 in) | (95 lb) |
| #0588 / #5088 | 485 mm | 1075 mm | 200 mm | 68 kg |
| | (19.1 in) | (42.3 in) | (8.0 in) | (150 lb) |
| #0595 | 432 mm | 686 mm | 178 mm | 42.7 kg |
| | (17 in) | (27 in) | (7 in) | (94 lb) |
| #5094 | 485 mm | 1075 mm | 910 mm | 280 kg |
| | (19.1 in) | (42.3 in) | (35.8 in) | (617 lb) |
| #5095 | 246 mm | 800 mm | 556 mm | 52.7 kg |
| | (14.5 in) | (31.5 in) | (21.9 in) | (116 lb) |
| #5294 | 216 mm | 1020 mm | 1800 mm | 726 kg |
| | (8.5 in) | (40.1 in) | (71 in) | (1600 lb) |

Table 1-4 shows details about the operating environment.

Table 1-4 Model 520 operating environment

| Operational component | Operational value |
|-----------------------------|--|
| kVA (maximum) | 0.789 |
| Rated voltage and frequency | 100-127 / 200-240 AC @ 50/60 Hz (+/- 0.5) |
| Power consumption | 750 watts |
| Thermal output | 2557 BTU/hr |
| Noise level | Rack drawer: 6.0 bels Stand-alone: 6.8 bels |
| Inrush and leakage current | 85 / 1.15 |
| Temperature | 5 - 35 degrees C (41 - 95 degrees F) |
| Noncondensing humidity | 8% - 80% |
| Wet bulb temperature | 23 degrees C (73.4 degrees F) (operating) |

The i570 physical layout

Figure 1-8 shows the plan view of model i570. This model is rack-mount only and uses blindswap cassette technology so that you will not get to see the inside of this server.

The I/O adapters can all be removed from the rear of the server. Other components can be accessed through the front of the server.



Figure 1-8 570 plan view

The rear of the i570 (Figure 1-9 on page 21) has the blindswap cassettes on the left and power supplies to the right. Between the I/O adapters and the power supply is the Service Processor.

There are two types of blindswap cassettes, one for card slot 1 - 5, and a different type for slot 6. (The cassette for slot 6 is different because it can accommodate the second HSL-2 adapter.)

On the lower right is the system interconnect port. This allows multiple i570s to be connected to form a large operating unit.

As with the i520, there are LAN, SPCN, HSL, and USB ports. (The USB ports are not available for use by the i5/OS. The LAN ports are available for partition use, but they are not available for Operations Console LAN.)



Figure 1-9 i570 rear view

If you look at the front of the i570, you see two DVD device drive bays. However, there is no bay for an internal tape drive. If a tape is required, it must be internal, in an expansion tower, or an external drive. As with the i520, only one of the DVD drive bays is available for i5/OS use.

In the control panel, there are USB and Ethernet ports. Neither of these is available for use by the partitions. The controls for accessing the display messages and entering the options is very similar to the current 8xx operation panel.



There are six disk bays in the i570.

Figure 1-10 i570 front view

Table 1-5 describes the physical features of the i570.

| Model 570 | Width | Depth | Height | Weight |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| System unit | 483 mm | 790 mm | 174.1 mm | 63.6 kg |
| | (19 in) | (31.1 in) | (6.85 in) | (140 lb) |
| #0588 / #5088 | 485 mm | 1075 mm | 200 mm | 68 kg |
| | (19.1 in) | (42.3 in) | (8.0 in) | (150 lb) |
| #0595 | 432 mm | 686 mm | 178 mm | 42.7 kg |
| | (17 in) | (27 in) | (7 in) | (94 lb) |
| #5094 | 485 mm | 1075 mm | 910 mm | 280 kg |
| | (19.1 in) | (42.3 in) | (35.8 in) | (617 lb) |
| #5095 | 246 mm | 800 mm | 556 mm | 52.7 kg |
| | (14.5 in) | (31.5 in) | (21.9 in) | (116 lb) |
| #5294 | 216 mm | 1020 mm | 1800 mm | 726 kg |
| | (8.5 in) | (40.1 in) | (71 in) | (1600 lb) |

Table 1-5 Model 570 physical specifications
Table 1-6 shows the operating environments for model 570.

| kVA (maximum) | 1.474 |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Rated voltage and frequency | 100-127 / 200-240 AC @ 50/60 Hz (+/- 0.5) |
| Power consumption | 1400 watts |
| Thermal output | 4774 BTU/hr |
| Noise level | Rack drawer: 6.0 bels Stand-alone: 6.8 bels |
| Inrush and leakage current | 85 A / 3m A |
| Temperature | 5 - 35 degrees C (41 to 95 degrees F) |
| Noncondensing humidity | 8% - 80% |
| Wet bulb temperature | 23 degrees C (73.4 degrees F) (operating) |

Table 1-6 Model 570 operating environment

1.5 Linux migration

This section provides a brief overview of the Linux migration process. For more information about the migration of an existing Linux partition on an iSeries system to a System i5, refer to the following Web site:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/index.jsp?topic=/iphbi/iphb
imigratiseries.htm

Upgrade planning for Linux partitions is a relatively new concept because the guest partition has not been available for very long. Consider the following three upgrade possibilities:

- Upgrading their Linux version to a new release.
- The effect of hardware upgrades on their Linux partitions.
- A new Linux kernel is required to run on System i5 hardware.

When upgrading to a new version of Linux, understand whether the distributor supplies an upgrade mechanism. When you upgrade from V5R1 to V5R3 or later, you must upgrade your Linux OS from 32-bit to 64-bit. You must also review your distributor's support for IBM PowerPC® 64-bit.

The second consideration is the hardware support for Linux partitions and the native adapter support. If you have any IOAs that you are planning to change as you upgrade, move these from the virtual disk to the native-attached SCSI disk or the fibre channel disk. You must also provide or change the installed disk driver in your Linux partition.

Upgrading with Linux partitions built over virtual devices is the simplest environment, provided the OS environments are upgraded. You can vary off the Linux server and vary it back on after the upgrade, assuming that none of the resource naming is changed.

1.5.1 Migrating a Linux logical partition from iSeries

Migrate a Linux logical partition from iSeries as follows:

- 1. In your existing server, upgrade to a version of Linux that supports the System i5 servers. Contact the Linux distributor for detailed instructions.
- 2. In your existing server, replace the existing I/O device drivers with the iSeries virtual I/O device drivers.
- 3. From the new Linux distribution, retrieve the Linux kernel that supports the System i5 POWER5 processors and store it in the OS/400 file system.

1.6 Windows migration

This section provides a brief overview of the Windows server migration process.

Moving the Windows server installations to new hardware is much simpler in an Integrated xSeries Server (IXS) or Integrated xSeries Adapter (IXA) environment than in an external stand-alone server environment. This section briefly outlines the upgrade process when the IXA or IXS card is physically moving to the new hardware. Other scenarios are explained in the Windows migration chapter.

An IXS card located in 8xx CEC slots must be accommodated in an expansion when upgrading to a System i5 because they cannot be accommodated in any of the 5xx CEC slots.

1.6.1 Moving the Integrated xSeries Adapter or Integrated xSeries Server from iSeries 8xx to 5xx

Perform the following tasks to move the IXS and the IXA from iSeries 8xx to 5xx:

- 1. Ensure that the iSeries server is at V5R3 or later.
- 2. Install the latest program temporary fixes (PTFs) on iSeries.
- 3. Upgrade the integration software on the xSeries:
 - a. Select Start → Programs → IBM iSeries → Integration for Windows Server.[™]
 - b. Select the server you want to upgrade.
 - c. Right-click and select All tasks \rightarrow Update.
- Back up your xSeries server.
- 5. During the upgrade to the iSeries hardware, move the IXA or IXS card to its new position in the new iSeries server.
- 6. Change the resource name in the nonprogrammable workstation (NWS) description.
- 7. Vary on and use as normal.

1.7 IBM AIX 5L migration

Because AIX 5L[™] is not supported on iSeries 8xx servers, this is not a migration issue. Any required AIX partitions can be set up and the data migrated subsequent to the model upgrade.

Note: Historically, model upgrades have not been offered in the AIX marketplace. Therefore, this scenario is not unusual for the AIX client base.

For more information about AIX 5L implementation, refer to *AIX 5L on IBM System i Platform Implementation Guide*, SG24-6455.

For information about upgrades to the system within the System i5 range, consult the AIX 5L upgrade pages at:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/aix/upgrade/index.html

1.8 Migration and upgrade check list

Table 1-7 contains a checklist that you can print to prepare for your upgrade and migration plan. During your planning process, customize this checklist and use it as a structure to help you identify what you must do for your particular situation and availability requirements.

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|----------------|---|--------------------------|--|
| General planni | ng task | | |
| Task | If you have not already done so, make a copy of this checklist and put it in your project book. | | |
| Task | Organize your project book and project documents. | | |
| Task | Perform physical planning tasks to make sure that you have adequate space and power for your upgraded system. Be sure to consider the differences in cabling requirements. | / | Visit the physical site planning site, which is available on the Web at: http://publib.boulder. ibm.com/infocenter/ese rver/v1r3s/index.jsp |
| Task | Verify your planned configuration. | // | |
| Task | If you have not already done so, determine whether you have to order replacements for unsupported hardware devices. | // | |
| Task | If your system exchanges information with other AS/400s or iSeries, plan any required changes to ensure the coexistence of different OS releases. | // | |
| Task | If you have not already done so, determine whether you will use IBM services for any part of the upgrade process. | // | |

 Table 1-7
 Migration and upgrade planning checklist

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|---------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| Task | Have the software and the publications been ordered on CD-ROM? | / | Validate with your local IBM Software Order organization. |
| Task | Has the user-based pricing been specified with the correct number of users? | // | Validate with your local IBM Software Order organization. |
| Hardware conf | iguration tasks | | |
| Task | Was an IBM-supplied configurator tool used for hardware and software configuration? | / | |
| Task | If LPARs are going to be used, was the LVT used? | | |
| Task | Will Linux or AIX partitions be installed? | | |
| Task | With Linux or AIX, will direct I/O or virtual I/O be used? What tape will be used for the Linux/ AIX partition backup? | | |
| Task | Does the configured system meet or exceed any capacity planning tool recommendations? | | |
| Task | Are the number of DASD arms and DASD IOAs sufficient for the client's planned DASD protection? | / | |
| Task | Has the appropriate feature code for mirroring or RAID protection been ordered? | // | |
| Task: | Will the quantity and speed of the tape devices be able to meet the client's backup window requirements? | // | |
| Task | Will all the products be delivered by the planned installation date? | // | |
| Task | Is there an established timetable for software and hardware setup and installation? | // | |
| Task | Has the appropriate amount of main storage memory been ordered? | // | |

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|------------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| Task | Does the hardware support the client's availability plan (DASD, Tape, LAN, and Communication lines)? | / | |
| Task | If non-IBM hardware will be attached to the system (especially non-IBM DASD), has the client verified whether it is supported? | / | Check with third-party product suppliers. |
| Task | Does the source system include migration or SPD towers? | // | |
| Task | Will the currently installed tower be converted to HSL/PCI towers? | | |
| Task | If no migration tower is going to be used, have PCI replacement features been ordered to replace the installed SPD features? | | |
| Task | Is space required for a load source pump? | | |
| Task | If the load source is going to be protected with RAID, has the proper amount of additional disk been ordered (3/7/9) for the RAID set required? | | |
| Task | Has the appropriate console type been configured (twinaxial, operations navigator, or HMC)? | / | |
| Task | Has an appropriate device been ordered or is it already available for the console type? | // | |
| Task | If 10k rpm disks are to be migrated to HSL towers, is there room to accommodate them? | // | |
| Task | Has the method to migrate data from nonconverted disk been identified? | // | |
| Installation pla | n tasks | | |
| Task | Has a site preparation review been planned? | // | |
| Task | Has the removal of migrated/replaced equipment been planned? | // | |

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|----------------|--|--------------------------|--|
| Task | Does the client understand which parts of this installation are the client's responsibility and which are the IBM Service Representative's responsibility? | | |
| Task | Have the appropriate installation manuals for both hardware and software been ordered for the client on CD-ROM? | / | |
| Task | Does the client agree with the installation plan? | // | |
| Task | Has the client committed personnel and resources to the project? | | |
| Task | Will the client location be able to move the system to the installation site from the delivery dock? Is the height, width, depth, and load capacity of any elevator to be used adequate for system? | | See the physical planning site: http://publib.boulder. ibm.com/infocenter/ese rver/vlr3s/index.jsp |
| Task | Have the names of the movers and the installation group been given to the client's security personnel? | | |
| Task | Will additional/special tools be required to move the equipment to the client's machine room? | / | |
| Software check | dist | | |
| Task | Has the required level of OS/400 been ordered? | // | |
| Task | If LPARs are going to exist, will they have valid OS/400 releases for the hardware and the primary partition? | // | |
| Task | Will the installed system be upgraded to the required level of OS/400 before the upgrade, and if so, when? | // | |
| Task | Are the current cumulative program temporary fix (CUM PTF) packages available? | // | |
| Task | Has the Preventive Service Planning (PSP) package been reviewed and understood? | // | |

| | Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|--|-----------------|--|--------------------------|---|
| | Task | Has the HIPER PTF list been reviewed and the PTF ordered? | // | |
| | Task | Are there any unsupported software/licensed program product (LPP)/programming request for price quotation (PRPQ) that have to be replaced or altered? Are alternatives known, and have they been ordered (for example, OV/400, client access, or fax)? | / | |
| | Task | Has the memo to user section titled "Licensed products that are no longer supported" been reviewed? | // | |
| | Task | Check the current installed client software for compatibility, that is, iSeries access. | | |
| | Task | Plan to upgrade the client software to the latest release and service pack. | | |
| | Task | If the upgrade is a side-by-side where all the client applications, libraries, and data will be restored to a new system, have alternative provisions been made to capture information contained in OUTQ, DTAQ, and MSGQ, if necessary? | | |
| | Site preparatio | n tasks | | |
| | Task | Is the site preparation on schedule? | // | |
| | Task | Has proper power installation been ordered for all the systems, the new I/O towers, and the additional equipment required during the upgrade only or any external equipment? | / | |
| | Task | Are the power connectors correct for the new system unit and the I/O tower? | // | Refer to the iSeries physical planning Web site at: http://publib.boulder. ibm.com/infocenter/ese rver/v1r3s/index.jsp |

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|--------------|--|--------------------------|---|
| Task | If using side-by-side, is power available to run both the systems at the same time? | // | |
| Task | Have all the preparations for cooling and grounding been met? | // | |
| Task | Has the client considered contracting an IBM Installation Planning Representative? | / | |
| Task | Have all the physical planning check lists from the physical planning Web site been completed? | | Refer to the iSeries physical planning Web site at: http://publib.boulder. ibm.com/infocenter/ese rver/v1r3s/index.jsp |
| Task | Does the client understand that it is their responsibility to order, install, and assemble all the twinaxial, coax, telephone twisted pair, Ethernet, and IBM cabling system cables? | | |
| Task | Have all the cables and connectors been ordered and confirmed? | | Refer to the iSeries physical planning Web site at: http://publib.boulder. ibm.com/infocenter/ese rver/v1r3s/index.jsp |
| Task | Has the floor plan layout been completed? | / | |
| Task | Is there adequate storage space for manuals, tools, and cleaning kits? | // | |
| Task | Is the client aware that a relatively short power outage can cause a significantly long system outage? Has a UPS been installed or ordered? Has the physical planning and capacity planning for the UPS been done? | // | |
| System manag | ement tasks | | |
| Task | Have the system components been labeled? | // | |
| Task | Have adequate training and update sessions been scheduled? | // | |

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Task | Has training for the HMC been scheduled? | // | |
| Task | Will programmers be trained to take advantage of the new functions and the OS/400 unique features and functions? | / | |
| Task | Has a standard for the application's documentation been established? | // | |
| Task | Has a standard for the operations been documented in a particular HMC? | | |
| Task | Are plans in place for ongoing management of disk space usage? | | |
| Task | Are there defined change management procedures in place? | | |
| Task | Are non-IBM software impacts known and documented? | | |
| Task | Are schedules in place for preventive maintenance for both hardware and software? | | |
| Task | Does the client understand the use of electronic customer support (ECS), Web-based support, and other IBM-supplied problem determination tools? | / | |
| Task | Is the save/restore strategy adequate for the new system? | // | |
| Task | Are the quantity and speed of tape devices adequate for the client to complete daily backups within the required window? | // | |
| Task | Have the networking options been reviewed? | // | |
| Task | Has the communication network been checked to ensure compatibility across all the products in the network? | // | |

| Task | Brief description | Due date / task owner | Where to find additional information |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Task | Has IBM Technology Services been offered to assist in the installation of all or part of the hardware, software, or configuration of the network/communication? | / | |
| Task | If planning for a TCP/IP network, has a unique Internet domain name been registered? | / | |
| Task | If the client is planning to connect to the Internet, are appropriate security measures planned or implemented? | // | |
| Testing. tasks | | | |
| Task | Plan how to validate your applications. | | |
| Task | Plan how to check network communications and client software. | | |
| The following t | able is for user defined tasks: | | |
| Task | | | |
| Task | | // | |

2

Migration examples

This chapter provides some examples of a general upgrade and migration process and certain advanced situations. Before reading this chapter, you must have an understanding of the planning considerations and migration options described in Chapter 1, "Planning for upgrades to System i5 hardware" on page 1.

Important: The steps and descriptions in this chapter are for guidance only. Steps, processes, and responsibilities might change. If you are planning an upgrade using a supported miscellaneous equipment specification (MES), the Customized Upgrade Installation Instructions (CUII) will always be the correct document to describe the upgrade. For an unsupported migration using an upgrade method, you should seek advice from your IBM Representative before attempting the upgrade.

2.1 General upgrade considerations

When you plan your specific upgrade, certain model-related considerations must be taken into account because these affect your decision pertaining to the upgrade method chosen.

Following are the supported model upgrades to new models:

- 810 or 820 to 520, 550
- 820, 825, 830, 840, 870, and 890 to 570, 595

This section also discusses data migration from models that do not support V5R3 or later.

Following are the five methods you can use to upgrade to the new models:

- Upgrade using the side-by-side method
- Data migration using the side-by-side method (source system at previous release)
- Upgrade using the unload/reload method
- Upgrade with converted or relocated disks
- Upgrade with load source migration

These methods apply to both logical partitioned systems and nonlogical partitioned systems.

If you are upgrading a logical partitioned server, additional considerations must be kept in mind. In the new hardware, there is no P0 primary partition. The functions of the primary partition are taken over by the flexible service processor. When upgrading, the logical partition (LPAR) migration tool allocates partition numbers, maintaining, where possible, the current numbering scheme. P0 becomes the next available number, for example, a server with partitions P0, P1, P2, and P3 will migrate to a server with partitions P1, P2, P3, and P4, where P1...P3 are as before, and P4 is the old P0.

Note: When we refer to the side-by-side or unload/reload methods here, we are discussing the style of upgrade or migration. This does not necessarily mean that the marketing features for a side-by-side or unload/reload have been configured on e-Config.

Table 2-1 compares the upgrade methods. The option with the least risk is a combination of side-by-side (to test) and relocated disks (for the final upgrade), when possible.

| Method | Complexity | Time to upgrade | Risk |
|-----------------------|------------|-----------------|--------|
| Side-by-side | High | Medium | Low |
| Data migration | High | Medium | Low |
| Unload/Reload | High | High | High |
| Relocated disks | Low | Low | Medium |
| Load source migration | Medium | Medium | Medium |

Table 2-1 Comparison of upgrade methods

2.1.1 Side-by-side upgrade and data migration using the side-by-side method

The side-by-side upgrade path is a method where the target system is a complete (or near-complete) replacement for the source system. This is of two types:

- ► Side-by-side, retaining the existing serial number (that is, a side-by-side upgrade).
- Side-by-side with a new serial number, that is, a box swap and not an upgrade. This is used often when there is no supported upgrade path from the client's existing system, as a data migration to a new system. If the source system is a model that does not support the V5R3 or later level of OS/400, there are additional steps in the upgrade path.

Both the methods involve the purchase of enough resources to duplicate most or all of the current environment.

Side-by-side upgrade

In the side-by-side upgrade method, with IBM approval, an IBM service contract, or both there may be limited use of the MES hardware for a short time to carry out extended user testing, thereby reducing the total upgrade risk and possibly reducing the downtime. The benefit of this method is that the production machine is unavailable only during the normal backup routines.

The source system supports V5R3 or later. This method is used to test the upgrade process and gives the users the time to test the new environment.

This is the sequence of events in the upgrade process:

- 1. The client reviews the information Request for Price Quotation (RPQ) and orders upgrade, services, and side-by-side time through a special bid process.
- 2. The required hardware is ordered to duplicate most or all of the environment.
- 3. The source system is upgraded to V5R3 or later in all the partitions.

Note: If you are upgrading the source system to i5/OS V5R4, a 17 GB load source is required for any i5/OS V5R4 partition.

- 4. The MES is installed as a stand-alone system.
- 5. The LPAR configuration is created on the target server.
- 6. Existing full system backups are used to create the new test system using the recovery procedures described in *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08, which is available at:

http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/publications/servlet/pbi.wss?SSN=07AHN00275429
11678&FNC=PBL&PBL=SC41-5304-08PBCEEB0200012125&TRL=TXTSRH

- 7. The client tests the current environment for up to 56 days.
- 8. Any production objects that are created or altered, and which will be required on a new system, are saved.
- 9. The target server is then synchronized with the source system. This can be done in a number of ways:
 - Install only changed objects (saved with the save changed objects command).
 - Install client data libraries only (assuming that the program libraries are unchanged).
 - Scratch install from up-to-date source system saves.

 Follow the disk migration upgrade path outlined in 2.1.4, "Upgrade with converted or relocated disks" on page 38.

Important: Although scratch install is the safest way to ensure that all of the objects are synchronized, it might take an excessive amount of time. The method allows for an intermediate stage where the target system is refreshed with the changed data to test the final upgrade method.

When using the save changed objects command, the client must be sure that the testing process does not change the data objects. Otherwise, data mismatches occur.

Refer to Backup and Recovery V5R4, SC41-5304 for detailed procedures.

10. Move any required hardware from the source to the target system.

11.Perform full system backups.

12.Go live.

2.1.2 Data migration using the side-by-side method (source system in the previous release)

In the data migration side-by-side upgrade method, a new server is installed with a serial number that is different from the existing server's because no upgrade path exists to the new hardware. The benefit of this method is that the production machine is unavailable only during normal backup routines.

You might chose to use this method:

- ▶ When the source system does not support the V5R3 or later release of OS/400.
- ▶ When the source system will not support a 17 GB load source drive.

The tasks involved in the upgrade process are:

- 1. The client orders a new server and services through a special bid process.
- 2. The new system duplicates most or all of the current environment.
- 3. The source system is upgraded to the highest release it can support.
- 4. The new server is installed.
- 5. If the new server has licensed programs installed, scratch install the System Licensed Internal Code (SLIC) and the base OS/400.

Note: A new system might be delivered with V5R3 and the licensed programs installed. In order to ensure a complete system migration, the target system must be scratch installed with only the V5R3 Licensed Internal Code and the base operating system.

For more details, refer to "Restoring Previous Release User Data to a New System" in *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08.

- 6. Existing full system backups are used to create the new test system, using the recovery procedures described in *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08.
- 7. Upgrade the licensed programs to i5/OS V5R3 or later.
- 8. Install the latest PTFs.

- 9. The client tests the current environment.
- 10. Any production objects that are created or altered, which will be required on the new system, are saved.
- 11. The target server is then synchronized with the source system. This can be done in a number of ways:
 - Install only the changed objects (saved with the save changed objects command).
 - Install only the client data libraries.
 - Scratch install from the up-to-date source system saves.

Important: Although scratch install is the safest way to ensure that all the objects are synchronized, it might take an excessive amount of time. This method allows for an intermediate stage where the target system is refreshed with the changed data to test the final upgrade method.

When using the save changed objects command, the client must be sure that the testing process does not change data objects. Otherwise, data mismatches can occur.

Refer to *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08 for information about the detailed procedures.

12. Move the required hardware, if any, from the source to the target system.

Perform full system backups (you require system saves in i5/OS V5R4 for recovery).
 Go live.

2.1.3 Upgrade using unload/reload

This is a dramatic upgrade where the entire system is saved to tape and restored on the new system. This method is used when large amounts of hardware are moved from the source system to the target system, and the target system, as delivered, does not have sufficient hardware to perform a side-by-side. This method is the least desirable option.

If the target system has sufficient hardware to be used as a system, a side-by-side is recommended to minimize the risks. Failback is possible in the event of failure.

The unload/reload scenario follows the same process as that described previously except that a new system is built with vital components (disk and I/O adapters) from the existing system. Thus, for a short time, when the customer engineer (CE) is performing the hardware upgrade, the client's data is only on tape; that is, the source system has the vital components removed, leaving it a lifeless hulk, and the target system is not yet built. Failback can involve a scratch install back onto the old hardware. However, this is time-consuming and will possibly take too long for the business to stand.

This is the process:

- 1. The vital system components move from the source to the target system. Other migration methods cannot be used.
- 2. Ensure a common tape media between the systems.
- 3. Upgrade all the partitions to i5/OS V5R3 or later release, with the latest cumulative pack, HIPER, and hardware related PTFs.
- 4. Perform a full system backup (at least two copies to guard against media error).
- 5. Check the job log to ensure that the saves are completed successfully.

Important: Be absolutely certain that the saves are completed successfully because data that is not saved cannot be recovered by using this method.

- 6. Remove the hardware from the source system and perform an MES upgrade.
- 7. Scratch install a new system from the saves.
- 8. Perform resource mapping.
- 9. Perform a test and go live.

2.1.4 Upgrade with converted or relocated disks

This method is the standard 8xx to 5xx upgrade and offers a plug-and-go upgrade. If it is well-planned, it can be the fastest form of upgrade. If many disks are being moved, there is always the risk of inadvertent damage, for example, a bent pin or a disk not starting. Although these can cause major problems, they are rare occurrences.

This is the simplest process of upgrading, provided there are no SPD-attached devices. Assuming there are no SPDs, this is the outline of this process:

- 1. Bring the current server and any partitions up to i5/OS V5R4 with the latest PTFs.
- 2. Ensure that there is space in the new system for the disk to be removed and relocated from the existing system unit.
- 3. Make sure that there is space for the I/O adapters to be relocated to the new server.
- 4. Perform a full system backup.
- 5. Power down the existing server.
- 6. Remove the disks and the I/O adapters.
- 7. Plug the disks into the new system unit.
- 8. Install the I/O adapters in the new system.
- 9. Upgrade or migrate any towers that are moving across.
- 10. Cable up the System Power Control Network (SPCN) loop.
- 11.Cable the high-speed link (HSL) (care must be taken to maintain bus numbering if there is an LPAR).
- 12. Run the LPAR migration program.
- 13. Power up.
- 14. Fix any ownership and resource naming issues.
- 15.Add the new resources to the system.
- 16.Go live.

Consider these points:

Model 820 to model 520/550 upgrade. The 820 has six disk bays and the 520/550 has four disk bays in the base configuration. If this is not noticed, circumstances where there are too many disks from the system unit to fit into the new system unit may arise. The configurator will place the "overspill" hardware in another expansion unit.

This might result in the existing Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) set being broken, which causes the upgrade to fail. The client will have to remove the "overspill" disks from the existing RAID set before the upgrade. An additional consideration in this

scenario is that the "overspill" disk might force an unwanted expansion unit and significantly increase the MES price.

- Bus cabling must be planned to ensure that buses retain their existing numbering wherever possible.
- ► SPCN is cabled as a loop in the new hardware.

2.1.5 Upgrade with load source migration

This upgrade is primarily used to upgrade from a 7xx model to a new 5xx. Because this is an unsupported upgrade path, additional services must be purchased to perform this upgrade. This can be used for both logical partitioned servers and nonlogical partitioned servers. This upgrade maintains the client investment in the disk and provides an easy transition to the new server.

This upgrade involves the following steps:

- 1. Upgrade the current system to V5R3 or later with the latest PTFs.
- 2. The order must include PCI versions of all the required SPD hardware.
- 3. Migrate all the data from the system unit to the disks in the 5065/5066 tower.
- 4. Perform a full system backup.
- 5. Load the source migration to the 5065/5066 tower.
- 6. Relocate any disks that must be repackaged in the new PCI expansion towers. Care must be taken to retain the exact position and RAID arrangement.
- 7. Convert the 5065/66 expansion towers to Peripheral Component Interconnect high-speed link (PCI/HSL).
- 8. Remove all of the SPD hardware.
- 9. Connect all of the converted hardware and the new hardware.
- 10.Run the LPAR migration tool.
- 11. Check the resource allocation, particularly the load source for the partition that was P0.
- 12.Perform a full system backup.
- 13.Test and go live.

If you employ this method for an 8xx to 5xx upgrade, you can use any 5065 or 5066 that is being upgraded to move the load source (load source on model 5xx does not have to be in the system unit). Here, you must use disk migrate when active in order to move all the data from the disks in the system unit and remove them from the configuration. The final task is to copy the load source unit to the tower.

During the upgrade, you can simply relocate any PCI I/O adapters in the system unit to the new locations in the new system unit. Run the LPAR migration tool and then fix the ownership issues, if any, and resource naming and allocation of new resources.

Consider the following points:

- Is it cost-effective to keep older drives?
- How will you maintain RAID sets during Disk Migrate While Active (DMWA) or physical relocation?
- ▶ What is the impact of changing two buses to three when upgrading 5065/5066?

2.2 Migration examples

This section provides a few examples of physical migration or upgrade.

2.2.1 Model 810 to model 520 (or 525, 550) with no LPAR

The source system is a model 810 with an integrated system expansion unit and no external towers. The target system is a model 520 with no external towers attached.

This is the upgrade path using migrated or converted disks:

- 1. Upgrade model 810 to V5R3 with the latest PTFs.
- Ensure that there is space in the new system for a disk to be removed and relocated from the existing system unit.

Restriction: Model 810 has six disk slots in the base configuration, with up to 18 disks in the system unit, all running off one RAID controller IOP. A model 520 has four disk slots in the base configuration with a maximum of eight disks in the system unit.

Depending on the capacity requirements, a client can choose to house all their disks in the system unit on the 520, which may have all the eight disks on one RAID controller or four on each of the two RAID controllers. This might result in disk reconfiguration services being need to be completed prior to the upgrade.

- 3. Make sure that there is space for the I/O adapters to be relocated to the new server.
- 4. Perform a full system backup.
- Power down the existing server.
- 6. Set up the Hardware Management Console (HMC).
- 7. Remove the disks and the I/O adapters. Ensure that you know which disk is the Load Source.
- 8. Plug the disks into the new system unit.
- 9. Install the I/O adapters in the new system.
- 10. Power on.

11. Fix any bus ownership issues and hardware resource naming issues.

12.Go live.

This upgrade is only complicated by disk migration issues, potentially going from 18 disks to eight, which must be performed before moving the disks across to the new system.

Example disk migration (Gig-Mig service)

The source system contains 18 8.58 GB disks in two RAID sets off the same IOP. These must be migrated to eight 35.16 GB disks in a single RAID set. All of the disks are in the system auxiliary storage pool (ASP).

It is assumed that the disks are 85% full. Eighteen 8.58 GB disks in two RAID sets = 137.3 GB total storage, and 85% of 137 GB = 116.7 GB of data on the system.

Perform the following tasks:

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- IPL to the dedicated service tool (DST).

- 3. Switch off the RAID protection.
- Remove one 8.58 GB drive from the configuration. Physically remove this drive from the system, move the load source drive to this drive's position, and place a new 35.16 GB drive into the load source position.
- 5. Perform a D type IPL and install SLIC (System Licensed Internal Code) in the new load source drive.
- 6. Perform the load source migrate procedure to migrate from the old load source drive to the new 35.16 GB drive. The old load source drive now becomes nonconfigured. (At this point, you have one 35 GB drive and 16 8 GB drives configured, and one 8 GB drive nonconfigured).
- IPL the system to a restricted state to ensure that storage management recovery is completed.
- 8. IPL to DST.
- 9. Remove six 8.58 GB drives from the configuration. Physically remove the seven nonconfigured drives from the system and replace with seven 35.16 GB drives.

Tip: In this case, the ASP threshold limit will have to be increased to allow this action (defaults to 95%).

- 10. Initialize and format the new drives.
- 11.Add the new drives to the system ASP.

12. Start the RAID protection.

- 13. Remove the 10 remaining 8.58 GB drives from the configuration.
- 14. Physically remove the old drives, leaving only eight new drives.
- 15.Perform an IPL.

When working out a strategy for this type of data migration, it is necessary to draw up a table similar to Table 2-2. This ensures that utilization does not exceed 100%. If utilization exceeds the ASP threshold by a small amount, it is possible to temporarily increase the threshold in the system service tools (SST) in order to allow migration to occur.

 Table 2-2
 Disk capacity and utilization through the migration process

| Stage | 8.58 GB equivalents | 35.16 GB equivalents | Disk capacity | Utilization |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| At start | 16 | 0 | 137.28 GB | 85% |
| Switch off RAID | 18 | 0 | 155.44 GB | 75% |
| Remove one drive from ASP | 17 | 0 | 145.86 GB | 80% |
| Migrate load source | 16 | 1 | 172.44 GB | 68% |
| Remove six 8.58 GB drives | 10 | 1 | 120.96 GB | 96% |
| Install seven 35.16 GB drives | 10 | 8 | 367.08 GB | 32% |
| Remove ten 78.58 GB drives | 0 | 8 | 281.28 GB | 41% |

| Stage | 8.58 GB equivalents | 35.16 GB equivalents | Disk capacity | Utilization |
|------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| Start RAID | 0 | 7 | 246.12 GB | 47% |

2.2.2 Model 820 with tower to model 520 (525, 550) with no LPAR

The source system is a model 820 with an integrated system expansion unit, and one #5074 external tower. The target system is a model 520 with the external tower migrated.

Follow the upgrade with a migrated or converted disks path.

- 1. Upgrade model 820 to V5R3 or later with the latest PTFs.
- 2. Ensure that there is space in the new system for the disk to be removed and relocated from the existing system unit that is maintaining the existing RAID sets.

Restriction: Model 820 has six disk slots in the base configuration with up to 12 disks in the system unit, all off one RAID controller IOP. A model 520 has four disk slots in the base configuration with a maximum of eight disks in the system unit.

The RAID set that contains the load source disk must be housed in the system unit (with the load source disk in slot 6). This might result in disk reconfiguration services being required prior to the upgrade.

- 3. Ensure that there is space for the I/O adapters to be relocated to the new server. Because the migration tower is not supported on model 520, I/O features and disks housed in this unit must be replaced before or during the upgrade.
- 4. Perform a full system backup.
- 5. Install an additional disk in the #5074 tower.
- 6. Install a new I/O in the #5074 tower.
- 7. If the system unit on the 820 contains two RAID sets, move one complete RAID set to the #5074 tower. If not, a data migration similar to that described in the previous example ("Example disk migration (Gig-Mig service)" on page 40) must be performed to get the number of disks down to the number supported in the 520 (either four or eight, depending on the order). If the system has been in use since the time you performed this action, perform another full system backup.
- 8. Power down the existing server.
- 9. Remove the disks and the I/O adapters from the system unit.
- 10.Set up the HMC.
- 11. Move the disks from the old system unit and install them in the new system unit.
- 12. Install the I/O adapters in the new system unit or #5074, as required.
- 13. Upgrade #5074 to #5094.
- 14. Power on the unit.
- 15. Fix any bus ownership issues and hardware resource naming issues.
- 16.Go live.

2.2.3 Model 640 to model 520 (or 525, 550) no LPAR

In this example, the source system, a model 640, will not upgrade to V5R3 or later. The highest release that it will support is V5R2. The upgrade process is as follows:

- 1. The client orders a new server. Services are ordered from IBM or an IBM Business Partner through a special bid process.
- 2. The new system duplicates most or all of the current environment.
- 3. The source system is upgraded to the highest release it can support (in this case, V5R2) to allow for interoperability.
- 4. The new server is installed.
- 5. Scratch install SLIC and base OS/400.

Note: The new system may be delivered with V5R3 and the licensed programs installed. In order to ensure complete system migration, scratch install the target system with only the V5R3 Licensed Internal Code and base operating system.

Refer to the section "Restoring Previous Release User Data to a New System" in *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08, which is available at:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=pub1sc41530408

- 6. Existing full system backups are used to create the new test system (using the recovery procedures outlined in *Backup and Recovery V5R4*, SC41-5304-08).
- 7. Upgrade the licensed programs to V5R3 or later.
- 8. Install the latest PTFs.
- 9. The client tests the current environment.
- 10. Any production objects that are created or altered, and are required on the new system, are saved.
- 11. The target server is then synchronized with the source system. This can be performed in a number of ways:
 - Installing only the changed objects (saved with the save changed objects command)
 - Installing the client data libraries only
 - Scratch installing from up-to-date source system saves

Important: Although scratch install is the safest way to ensure that all of the objects are synchronized, it might take an excessive amount of time.

The side-by-side method allows for an intermediate stage, where the target system is refreshed with the changed data to test the final upgrade method.

When using the save changed objects command, the client must be sure that the testing process does not change data objects. Otherwise, data mismatches might occur.

Refer to Backup and Recovery V5R4, SC41-5304-08 for detailed procedures.

12. Move the required hardware, if any, from the source system to the target system.

13. Perform full system backups (you require system saves in V5R4 for recovery).

14.Go live.

2.2.4 Model 720 to model 520 (or 525, 550)

There is no supported upgrade path from model 720 to model 520, but in this case, the source system can be upgraded to V5R3. Note that model 720 does *not* support 17 GB load source drives, and therefore, cannot have i5/OS V5R4 installed on the source system. i5/OS V5R4 must be installed during an intermediate step.

Tip: Because there is no supported upgrade path, the source system and the target system have different serial numbers.

If the source system never had its name changed from the shipped value, that is, Sxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the system serial number, it is recommended that you do *not* copy the network attributes across, because this results in the new system being named with a serial number that is not its own.

Change the system name by issuing the CHGNETA command.

Press F4 and change any parameters as necessary.

The upgrade process is as follows:

- 1. The required hardware is ordered to duplicate most or all of the environment. (it is possible that the source system has communication lines that are no longer being used, and so the target system does not have to reflect the source system exactly.)
- 2. The source system is upgraded to V5R3.
- 3. The target system is installed.
- 4. The existing full system backups are used to create the new test system (using the recovery procedures from the Backup & Recovery guide) (iSeries Backup and Recovery, SC41-5904-08).
- 5. The client tests the current environment.
- 6. Production objects that are created or altered, and are required on the new system, are saved.
- 7. The target server is then synchronized with the source system. This can be performed in a number of ways:
 - Installing only the changed objects (saved with the save changed objects command).
 - Installing only the client data libraries, assuming the program libraries are unchanged.
 - Scratch installing from up-to-date source system saves.
 - Follow the disk migration upgrade path outlined in 2.1.4, "Upgrade with converted or relocated disks" on page 38.

Note: Although scratch install is the safest way to ensure that all o the objects are synchronized, it might take an excessive amount of time. The method allows for an intermediate stage where the target system is refreshed with the changed data to test the final upgrade method.

When using the save changed objects command, the client must be sure that the testing process does not change the data objects. Otherwise, data mismatches occur.

Refer to Backup and Recovery V5R4, SC41-5304-08 for detailed procedures.

2.2.5 Model 840 to model 570 (system upgrade with no LPAR or Hardware Management Console)

The source system is a model 840 with a 9079 base I/O tower 9840/sb3. The target system is a model i570 with a 5294 expansion unit, using the Operations Console LAN. In this scenario, only the disks in the source system unit are moved.

Note: This is a disk-only migration, which has two RAID sets hanging off one RAID controller. RAID set 1 is made up of six disks, and RAID set 2 is made up of eight disks. This means that the disks can be moved straight across to the new system without any reconfiguration of disks.

Following is the upgrade process:

- 1. Develop an implementation plan to prepare for the upgrade, including asking the following questions:
 - Is there a supported path for the new system?
 - Is there any hardware that must be migrated or ordered?
 - Are there enough DASD capacity and slots?
 - Predefine the system console (this is important if you are planning LPARs).

Note: For MES upgrades, the Customized Upgrade Installation Instructions (CUII) must be used in conjunction with the implementation plan and the steps described here. These instructions are available to the hardware service representatives.

- Upgrade model 840 to i5/OS V5R4 with the latest PTFs. This function can be performed by your hardware representative.
- 3. The client tests the current environment.
- 4. The client performs a full system backup (perform two sets, and do not forget to clean the tape drive before and after each backup).
- 5. Verify that all the disks are reporting in by performing the following tasks:
 - a. In the iSeries main menu, type STRSST and press Enter.
 - b. Type 1 (Start a Service Tool) and press Enter.
 - c. Type 3 (Work with disk units) and press Enter.
 - d. Type 1 (Display disk configuration status) and press Enter.

In the disk unit details display you can see the bus number, the ASP number, the serial number, and the status of the unprotected disks.

- 6. Print the system rack configuration using SST (STRSST):
 - a. In the iSeries main menu, type STRSST and press Enter.
 - b. Type 1 (Start a Service Tool) and press Enter.
 - c. Type 7 (Hardware Service Manager) and press Enter.
 - d. Press PF6 to print the report.
- 7. From the rack config list, map the resource name to the card position, for example, DD009 D31.

Tip: Use the LPAR validation tool (LVT) to establish the current and the new component locations.

8. Use the rack config list, LVT report, and the diagram from the front cover panel of the source system 840 unit to locate the physical location of disk drives, and then access the

service tools (STRSST) to establish how many RAID sets were on the system. In our scenario, there were six disks in the first RAID set, and eight disks in the second RAID set. Therefore, they could be moved to the new server that maintains the RAID set.

Note: If you have more than six disks, including your load source in a RAID set, some additional reconfiguration tasks must be performed during the preplanning stage.

9. Verify that the Ethernet/LAN Console is in the correct slot for the Operations Console. Details about card placement are available in the topic "Operations console hardware requirements in the connecting to iSeries" on selecting Connecting to iSeries → Operations Console → Manage Operations Console → Change from one console type to another → Twinaxial console to Operations Console. This is available in the IBM eServer iSeries Information Center on the Web at:

http://www.iseries.ibm.com/infocenter

- For the initial installation of the Operations Console on a LAN network, perform the following tasks:
 - a. Ensure that the PC is connected to the LAN network.
 - b. Connect the system to the LAN network using the console driver card in slot C04 or C06.
 - c. Label both the cables.
- 11.Perform the following DST function to identify the Operations Console LAN PC as the system console for the DST:
 - a. Select **DST** from the IPL or Install the system menu or by selecting panel function 21.
 - b. Enter the QSECOFR user ID and password (case-sensitive) to access the DST.
 - c. Select 5 (Work with DST Environment) and press Enter.
 - d. Select 2 (System Devices) and press Enter.
 - e. Select 6 (Console Mode) and press Enter.
 - f. Select Console type 3 (Operations Console (LAN)).
 - g. Select Save console type by pressing F7 and store before you exit.

Note: This procedure is found in the section "Selecting Operations Console as the console device" in *Operations Console Setup*, SC41-5508-02.

- 12. When migrating to the Operations Console, it is important that you configure the new Operations Console PC before beginning the server model upgrade. At this point in the upgrade instructions, where console functions are required on the new iSeries server, you will be able to perform the required functions without your current console device. The Operations Console features matching the connectivity you plan to use must be specified as part of the order for your new iSeries server.
- 13. Power down the existing system and remove the cables.
- 14. Connect the new system with the HSL cables and the SPCN cables (as per the CUII document).
- 15. In the new i570 system, the CE will install the catch assembly to each central electronics complex (CEC) drawer.
- 16.Install the fabric flex (SMP) cable so that the left side is behind the rack frame and will not interfere with the covers or the rack trim (Figure 2-1 on page 47).



Figure 2-1 Fabric flex (SMP) cable

Note: Fitting the flex cable is a client install, but an MES adding a CEC drawer is considered a CE install.

- 17. Start with the top CEC drawer, and then align the flex cable assembly to engage the install lever with the catch assembly.
- 18. After ensuring that the connector pin alignment is all right, move the lever in the fabric flex cable to the installed position and lock in place. (Refer to the fabric (SMP) cable install lever action in the CUII document.)

19.Install the flexible service processor cable on the right side of the rear of the CEC unit (Figure 2-2).



Figure 2-2 FSP cable

- 20.Remove the load source disk from the old server and insert it into the correct load source slot in the new system.
- 21. Remove the five remaining disks from the first RAID set in the old server and insert them into the empty slots in the same cage as the load source disk mentioned in the previous step (they can be placed in any order).
- 22. Remove the last eight disks from the second RAID set in the old server and insert them into the empty slots in the cage in the 5294 expansion unit. This maintains the existing RAID set.
- 23. For the first connection between the iSeries server and Operations Console PC, you must use the service tools user ID of 11111111 (eight 1s). This prevents the shipped expired user IDs from preventing a successful reauthentication of the client connection to the server. When you receive the OS/400 release upgrade, the shipped user IDs (except 11111111) are expired. To establish a successful reauthentication of the client connection to the server, use the service tools user ID of 11111111 (eight 1s). This is especially important for automatic installations.

Attention: Failure to comply with these actions may prevent the console from working correctly during the upgrade or install.

24. Power on the new server.

25.Perform full system backups (you require system saves in i5/OS V5R4 for recovery). 26.Go live.

Important: During a manual IPL of the system, if no console was specified earlier, you will receive two additional screens to confirm the setting of the console mode. The first confirmation requires F10 to accept your current console type and the second confirmation screen shows that a value did not exist previously (a zero is present against the old value) and the new value is shown. Press Enter to exit and set the console mode automatically. The IPL then continues to the IPL screen or the Install the System screen. Although this condition is most likely to occur during the installation of a new partition, it could happen on your first manual IPL of i5/OS V5R4.



System i5 disk at i5/OS V5R4

This chapter describes data protection schemes that are available and the points to consider when deciding among the different schemes and the methods in which to implement them. This chapter also includes details about several ways of performing the load source disk migration that might be required when upgrading system hardware.

3.1 Introducing the System i5 disk technology

This section describes available methods for data protection through data redundancy techniques.

3.2 Disk types (speeds and feeds)

Table 3-1 shows the integrated disks that are supported on System i5.

| Disk type | Capacity (GB) | Speed (rpm) |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| 4317 | 8.58 | 10,000 |
| 4318 | 17.54 | 10,000 |
| 4319 | 35.16 | 10,000 |
| 4326 | 35.16 | 15,000 |
| 4327 | 70.56 | 15,000 |
| 4328 | 141.1 | 15,000 |

Table 3-1 Disk types supported for System i5

3.3 Disk packaging

In System i5, as with its predecessors, most models can accommodate disk drives in the CEC. The System i595 is the exception because it does not have any disk drive slots in the CEC.

3.3.1 System i 515, 525, 520, and 550

These systems all have eight disk slots that can be arranged in one or two buses, allowing either a single bus arrangement of one to eight disks or two buses that can each have one to four disks. This means the disk in the CEC can be available for one or two logical partitions. The available protection type depends on the disk adapter being used or the embedded IOP.

3.3.2 System i 570

The System i 570 can accommodate one to six disks in the CEC, arranged on one bus and therefore only one logical partition. These disks can use all protection types depending on the chosen disk adapter or the imbedded IOP.

3.3.3 System i 595

The System i 595, similar to the earlier high-end iSeries model 890, cannot have any disk drives in the CEC.

3.3.4 I/O expansion

The System i5 has several expansion frames that can house disk drives. These expansion frames connect to the System i5 or iSeries via the high-speed loop. The models used are the

5094, 5294 and the 5095 expansion towers. The 5294 is merely a two-high 5094. Each 5094 can house 45 disk drives and the I/O cards that drive them.

The 5095 expansion tower is a smaller unit that can be floor or rack mounted. It houses up to 12 disk units along with the I/O adapters that drive them.

A new type of disk drive draw is now available. This disk draw is available only in a 4U rack mounted enclosure. It is SCSI connected rather than HSL. This offers a longer cable length (20m) that might be attractive to customers wishing to install many disks on one system where a short HSL cable length might cause physical arrangement limitations.

The 24 drives in the EXP24 enclosure can be arranged in four six-disk packs or two 12-disk packs. These packs can be allocated to different logical partitions. The pack arrangements and protection depend on the I/O adapters controlling them. I/O adapters controlling the disk in an EXP24 can be in an I/O expansion located in the same rack as the EXP24 or the CEC.

3.4 Disk protection types

An i5/OS disk can have a variety of protection methods. Typically, a protection method is implemented throughout the system. However, in some instances you might choose to mix the protection types. For example, a partitioned system may have different types of protections in different partitions based on level of availability. The production partition may have mirrored protection because it requires the highest level of protection, but the development partition may have Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) protection because this is a less critical environment.

The following sections provide an overview of the different protection methods.

Unprotected

Disks can be added to auxiliary storage pools (ASPs) without any form of data protection. This method is recommended only in situations where the maximum usable disk capacity is required and data does not have to be protected, such as a system that is used only for training purposes and is regularly scratch-installed to set up new courses.

Device parity protected

Device parity protection is a hardware function that protects data from being lost because of disk unit failure or damage to the data on a disk. Two types of device parity protections are implemented in i5/OS V5R4: RAID-5 and RAID-6. (The earlier releases of the operating system implemented only RAID-5 parity protection.)

RAID-5 protection

Disks are protected by a "parity check bit" being written for each sector on the drives. In the event of a single disk failure within a RAIDset, the system continues to operate in a degraded mode because the data in the failing unit can be calculated by using the saved parity value and the values of the bits in the same locations on the other disks.

In the event of a second disk failure within the same RAIDset, the system fails and system recovery is from data backups.

The "cost" of RAID-5 is a reduction in the overall disk capacity, equivalent to one disk per RAIDset. For example, a system with two RAID-5 RAIDsets of 10 disks each (20 drives in total) will have a total capacity equivalent to 18 disks.

A RAID-5 RAIDset can spread parity data over two, four, eight, or 16 drives. A RAID-5 RAIDset can contain a minimum of three disk drives (four for older disk input/output adapters) and a maximum of 18 disk drives.

RAID-6 protection

Disks are protected by writing two redundant data bits using the p&q parity data based on the Reed-Solomon algorithm. Conceptually, by writing two sets of parity data, a RAID-6 array can tolerate up to two disk failures within the array.

A RAID-6 array with a single disk failure is still protected as much as a RAID-5 array with no failures. A RAID-6 RAIDset with two failing drives continues to function in degraded mode until a third disk in that RAIDset fails.

The "cost" of a RAID-6 array is equivalent to two drives capacity per RAIDset. For example, a system with two RAID-6 RAIDsets of 10 disks each (20 drives) will have a total capacity equivalent to 16 disks.

RAID-6 arrays spread parity data across *all* drives in the array when RAID-6 is started, so if seven drives are in the array, they will each have two parity stripes using up a total of two-sevenths of the capacity, leaving five-sevenths of the capacity for user data. Any disk drives that are subsequently added to the array will *not* have any RAIDstripes, and so the full capacity is available for user data. (For example, adding two more drives to the RAIDset gives seven drives at five-sevenths capacity and two drives at full capacity.) For performance reasons, it is desirable to stop and restart RAID on these drives to spread the parity stripes across all the nine drives, giving nine drives of seven-ninths capacity.

A RAID-6 RAIDset can contain a minimum of four disk drives and a maximum of 18 disk drives.

RAID-6 can be implemented only on #571B and #571E IOAs, which have auxiliary cache. IOA cache is mirrored to prevent data loss in the event of an IOA cache failure.

An additional feature of RAID-6 is that when functioning with no drive failures, the RAID-6 IOA can interrogate the user data and the parity data to ensure consistency. Because of the two parity bits, any inconsistency can be isolated and corrected. For example, if a disk head is not tracking correctly, and therefore not reading data correctly, the parity bits will not conform to the data and a parity inconsistency is logged. On a RAID-5 implementation, all that is known is that there is a problem, and the failing disk cannot be isolated until other diagnostics show a hardware error. However, on a RAID-6 implementation, because of the two parity bits, the false data bits can be isolated and corrected. Thus the system can perform "data cleaning."

Note: The System i5 implementation of RAID-6 uses the "P&Q parity data based on the Reed-Solomon algorithm" method. This method utilizes a hardware finite field multiplier direct memory access (DMA) engine to perform the necessary calculations. Because other implementations utilize software calculations, they use CPU capacity or have to use additional disk capacity for parity data (or both), reducing available space for the user data.

Mirror protected

Disk mirroring requires each disk drive to have an identical mate. An exact copy of the data on the first drive is made to the second drive. In the event of a drive failure, the system continues to function using the other copy. The system fails only if both drives in a mirrored pair fail.

Mirror protection can be heightened by carefully selecting and placing the hardware. The system will always select the best available protection when starting the mirroring process. Mirror protection can be at the following levels, with the greatest protection coming last:

Disk protected

A disk drive failure will not cause system outage. However, because both the disks of a mirrored pair are on the same Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) bus, a failure of the SCSI bus causes system outage.

SCSI bus protected

All of the disks have their mirrored pair on a different SCSI bus. However, a mirrored pair is on the same storage adapter card (IOA). In this case, an entire SCSI bus may fail, causing the system to lose contact with all drives on that SCSI bus, and there is no system outage.

IOA protected

Both of the disks of mirrored pairs are on separate storage adapter cards (IOA). Failure of an IOA does not cause system outage.

Input/output processor protected

Mirrored pairs are separated at the input/output processor (IOP) level. Failure of an IOP does not cause system outage, although some facilities might be unavailable depending on the hardware that is also present on that IOP.

Bus protection

Mirrored pairs are separated at the system bus level. Although failure of a system bus does not cause system outage, the other hardware attached to that bus is unavailable.

Frame protection

Mirrored pairs are in separate I/O towers. Although complete failure of an I/O tower does not cause system outage, the other hardware located on that tower is unavailable.

High-speed link loop protection

Mirrored pairs are on separate high-speed link (HSL) loops. Although HSL loop failure does not cause system outage, other hardware attached to that HSL loop is unavailable.

When adding additional drives to an already mirrored system, it is necessary to stop and restart mirroring in order to gain the best level of mirroring for that hardware configuration.

3.4.1 RAID-5 vs RAID-6

Table 3-2 shows a comparison between RAID-5 and RAID-6.

| Consideration | RAID-5 | RAID-6 |
|---|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Number of disk failures in RAIDset before system outage | 1 | 2 |
| Capacity cost per RAIDset (disk equivalent) | 1 | 2 |
| Minimum drives per RAIDset | 3 (4 with older IOAs) | 4 |
| Maximum drives per RAIDset | 18 | 18 |
| IOA | Many different | Only #571A & #571E |
| Cache | Single point of failure | Auxiliary Cache (Dual Copy) |

Table 3-2 Comparison between RAID-5 and RAID-6

3.4.2 Considerations when planning disk protection

Keep these items in mind when planning your disk protection method.

Mixing RAID types

It is possible to mix RAID-5 and RAID-6 protection schemes on the same system, even on the same disk IOA. For example, an IOA with 12 #4327 drives and three #4328 drives connected, when deciding on the option of starting RAID-6, will start one RAID-6 RAIDset of 12 drives — each with parity stripes, and therefore having 10/12ths capacity — and one RAID-5 RAIDset of three drives. (Three drives are insufficient to start a RAID-6 RAIDset; a minimum of four drives are required.)

For operational simplicity, systems should not mix RAID types. This requirement might necessitate moving disks or buying additional hardware.

Auxiliary storage pools

User ASPs are designated collections of disks and are used as a method to separate data into defined areas of storage. Disks are placed in auxiliary storage pools (ASPs) during disk configuration. If disk failures occur within a user ASP that the chosen method of disk protection cannot handle, the user ASP becomes unavailable to the system. In the case of the system ASP (ASP1), this results in system outage. If a user ASP (any ASP, not ASP1) becomes unavailable, some applications continue to function if their required programs and data are not in that ASP.

User ASPs can be used for separating different applications or for performance reasons. For example, journal receivers can be placed in a user ASP so that database writes are not in contention with journal writes on the same disk.

It is advantageous to separate essential and nonessential applications into separate user ASPs and assign different levels of disk protection to each ASP. For example, archive data can be in a user ASP with RAID-5 protection, nonessential back office data in a user ASP with RAID-6 protection, and business-critical functions and data in an ASP with HSL-level mirroring.

Although it is possible to assign disks from the same RAIDset into different ASPs, careful thought must be given to the possible outcome of disk failures within the RAIDset.

Device types and speeds

Keep these points in mind:

- Mirrored pairs must be of the same capacity. (They can be of different speeds, but this is not recommended.)
- All of the disks in a RAIDset must be of the same capacity. (They can be of different speeds, but again, this is not recommended.)
- ► Load source disk for i5/OS V5R3M5 and i5/OS V5R4M0 must be 17.54 GB or higher.

RAID optimization

Unlike mirrored protection, all of the disk drives in a RAIDset must be on the same storage IOA card. This is because the IOA performs the calculations that are required for the parity stripes or data regeneration following disk failure. Within this limitation, there is scope for defining different optimization strategies, as outlined in the following list:

Availability

A parity set optimized for availability offers a greater level of protection because it allows a parity set to remain functional in the event of an SCSI bus failure. The availability

optimization value ensures that a parity set is formed from at least three disk units of equal capacity, each attached to a separate bus on the IOA. For example, if an IOA has 15 disk units and is optimized for availability, the result might be five parity sets with three disk units, each attached to separate SCSI buses on the adapter. (OS/400 V5R3 is required to optimize for availability.)

Capacity

A parity set that is optimized for capacity stores the maximum amount of data possible. The IOA may generate fewer parity sets with more disk units in each parity set. For example, if an I/O adapter has 15 disk units and is optimized for capacity, the result might be one parity set containing 15 disk units.

Balanced

A balanced parity set compromises between the ability to store large amounts of data and to provide fast access to data. For example, if an I/O adapter has 15 disk units and you choose the balanced parity optimization, the result might be two parity sets, one with nine disk units and one with six disk units.

Performance

A parity set optimized for performance provides the fastest data access. The I/O adapter might generate more parity sets with fewer numbers of disk units. For example, if an I/O adapter has 15 disk units, and is optimized for performance, the result might be three parity sets with five disk units each.

The process of selecting the RAID optimization strategy can be performed using the iSeries Navigator or the dedicated service tools (DST).

Selecting the RAID optimization strategy using the iSeries Navigator

Perform the following tasks to select the RAID optimization strategy using the iSeries Navigator:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Disk Units**, right-click **Parity Sets** and select **Change Optimization**, as shown in Figure 3-1.



Figure 3-1 Changing RAID optimization using iSeries Navigator
2. In the page that is displayed (Figure 3-2), use the Optimization drop-down box to select the required optimization.

| 🔅 Confirm Changi | ng Optimiz | ation - 9.5.1 | 7.170 | | | | |
|---|---|---|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------|---|--|
| | Different disk units may be included in a new parity set based upon the RAID level and optimization you select. These parameters affect all new parity sets created, but have no effect on existing parity sets. Select how you want the parity set optimized. | | | | | | |
| | | RAID Level: | RAID 5 | | - | | |
| | | Optimization: | | Availability | | • | |
| Eligible Parity Sets | Disk Units | I/O Processor | I/O Adapte | Balance | | | |
| ➡ Solution ➡ Solution | 16 3 3 4 | Cmb02 Cmb01 Cmb01 Cmb01 Cmb01 | Dc02 Dc01 Dc01 Dc01 Dc01 | Performance Availability Fr07 | No | | |
| • | Change (| Optimization | Canc | el | Help | ? | |

Figure 3-2 Selecting optimization

3. On the same page use the RAID Level drop-down box to select the required RAID type, as shown in Figure 3-3. Click **Change Optimization**.

| 🛱 Confirm Changing Optimization - 9.5.17.170 | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------|---|---------------|------------|------------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| (| | Different disk units may be included in a new parity set based upon the RAID level and optimization you select. These parameters affect all new parity sets created, but have no effect on existing parity sets. Select how you want the parity set optimized. | | | | | | | |
| | | | RAID Level: | | RAID 5 | - | | | |
| | | | Optimization: | | RAID 5 RAID 6 | | | | |
| Γ | Eligible Parity Sets | Disk Units | I/O Processor | I/O Adapte | r Tower | Availability | | | |
| | 🗄 🎇 Parity Set 1 | 16 | Cmb02 | Dc02 | Fr01 | No | | | |
| E | 🗄 🌄 Parity Set 2 | 3 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | | |
| 6 | 🗄 🌄 Parity Set 3 👘 | 3 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | | |
| Ē | Ē 👯 Parity Set 4 | 4 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | | |
| | • | | | | | | | | |
| | | Change C | ptimization | Canc | el | Help ? | | | |

Figure 3-3 Changing the RAID Level

Selecting RAID optimization strategy using the dedicated service tools

Perform the following tasks to select the RAID optimization strategy using the DST:

- 1. In the DST main menu, select Work with Disk Units.
- 2. Select Work with Disk Configuration.
- 3. Select Work with device parity protection.
- 4. The screen in Figure 3-4 appears. Enter 7 for Select parity optimization.

| | Work with Device Parity Protection |
|--|---|
| Select one of the | following: |
| 1. Display de 2. Start dev 3. Stop devic | evice parity status ice parity protection - RAID 5 ce parity protection |
| 4. Include un | nit in device parity protection |
| 5. Exclude un | nit from device parity protection |
| 6. Start devi | ice parity protection - RAID 6 |
| Select par | rity optimization |
| Sologtion | |
| Selection - | |
| F3=Exit F1 | 12=Cancel |
| Fi 0.4 01 i F | |

Figure 3-4 Changing RAID optimization using DST

5. In the Select Parity Optimization screen (Figure 3-5), select the required type of optimization and press Enter.

| Select Parity Optimization |
|---|
| Select how you want the parity set optimized: |
| The current parity optimization is: Balanced |
| Type choice, press Enter. Select parity optimization |
| 1. Availability 2. Balance 3. Capacity |
| 4. Performance |
| |
| Selection |
| - - |
| F3=Exit F12=Cancel |

Figure 3-5 Selecting parity optimization

If the required optimization cannot be performed due to resource constraints (for example, not enough disks), a message is displayed when starting RAID, as shown in Figure 3-6.

| _ | Parit | y set ⊧ | Jill not | have high availability | |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| You hav optimiz listed There m to each High Av | te selected t tation for de below will n ust be one d Input/Outpu ailability c | he High vice pa ot be c isk uni t Adapt onfigur | n Availa arity, b configur it of th ter (IOA ration | bility configuration out the parity sets ed for High Availability. e same capacity attached) to achieve the | |
| If you the Hig Paritu | proceed, the h Availabili Serial | follow ty conf | √ing par figurati | ity sets will not have on. Resource | |
| Set | Number | Tune | Model | Name | |
| 1 | 0C-6200013 | 571F | 001 | DC02 | |
| 2 | OC-6199036 | 571B | 001 | DC01 | |
| 3 | 0C-6199036 | 571B | 001 | DC01 | |
| 4 | 0C-6199036 | 571B | 001 | DC01 | |
| | | | | | |
| F3=Exit | F12 | =Cancel | L | | |
| Functio | n key not al | lowed | | | |
| | _ | | | | |

Figure 3-6 Error message due to inadequate disks being available for the selected optimization

| _ | | | Display | Devid | e Parit | y Status | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|------|------------|-------|---------|----------|---------------------|--|
| Parity | | | Serial | | | Resource | | |
| Set | ASP | Unit | Number | Type | Model | Name | Status | |
| | ж | ж | 68-0E30697 | 4326 | 070 | DD023 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 68-0E306CE | 4326 | 078 | DD025 | Active | |
| 4 | | | 0C-6199036 | 571B | 001 | DC01 | RAID-5 | |
| | ж | ж | 68-0E2E116 | 4327 | 078 | DD017 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 68-0E2C3DD | 4327 | 078 | DD019 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 68-0E3F6F8 | 4327 | 070 | DD018 | Active | |
| 5 | | | 0C-6199036 | 571B | 001 | DC01 | RAID-6/Availability | |
| | ж | ж | 21-89B8D | 4328 | 099 | DD033 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 21-89BA7 | 4328 | 099 | DD021 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 21-89C7A | 4328 | 099 | DD020 | Active | |
| | ж | ж | 21-89C42 | 4328 | 099 | DD032 | Active | |
| | | | | | | | Bottom | |
| * - See | * - See help for more information | | | | | | | |
| Press Enter to continue. | | | | | | | | |
| F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Display disk unit details F11=Display disk hardware status F12=Cancel | | | | | | | | |

After RAID is started with the required optimization, the Display Device Parity Status screen (Figure 3-7) displays information about the optimization used.

Figure 3-7 Display device parity information screen

3.4.3 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk with iSeries Navigator

To migrate to RAID-6 from unprotected disk with iSeries Navigator, follow these steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand Disk Units, right-click Parity Sets and select Start parity.



Figure 3-8 Selecting Start parity from Operations Navigator

2. On the page that is displayed (Figure 3-9), confirm that the RAID Level and Optimization settings are correct. Select the boxes for the RAIDsets you want to start, and click **Start Parity**.

| Confirm Startin | g Parity - 9.! | 5.17.170 | | | | | |
|----------------------|---|--|---|---|------------|----|--|
| | Select how you wish to start pa be RAID 5 sets WARNING: Yo disk units that parity sets can complete and o | i want the parity se arity on, and select a created due to res u are about to star will be in the parity take anywhere froi can potentially affe | ts optimized, th Start Parity. If y source limitatio parity on the s sets are displa n several minu ct system perfo | zed, then select the parity sets you ity. If you select RAID 6, there may nitations. I the selected parity sets. All of the displayed. Starting parity on these I minutes to over an hour to a performance. | | | |
| | RAID Level: | | | D 6 | <u> </u> | - | |
| Select All | | Optimization: | Bal | ance | | - | |
| Eligible Parity Sets | Disk Units | I/O Processor | I/O Adapter | Tower | Availabili | ty | |
| 🕀 🎇 Parity Set 1 | 16 | Cmb02 | Dc02 | Fr01 | No | | |
| 🔁 🎇 Parity Set 2 👘 | 🗹 3 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | |
| 🔁 🌄 Parity Set 3 👘 | 🗹 3 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | |
| ⊞ — 🛴 Parity Set 4 | ₹ 4 | Cmb01 | Dc01 | Fr07 | No | | |
| • | | | | | | ► | |
| | Start P | arity | Cancel | | Help | ? | |

Figure 3-9 The Confirm Starting Parity window

The Start Parity status window appears (Figure 3-10).



Figure 3-10 The Start Parity status window

3.4.4 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk using dedicated service tools

To migrate to RAID-6 from unprotected disk using the DST, follow these steps:

- 1. From the DST main menu, select Work with Disk Units.
- 2. Select Work with disk unit configuration.
- 3. Select Work with Device Parity Protection.
- 4. On the screen shown in Figure 3-11, enter 6 for Start device Parity Protection RAID-6.

| Work with Device Parity Protection |
|---|
| Select one of the following: |
| 1. Display device parity status |
| 2. Start device parity protection - RAID 5 |
| 3. Stop device parity protection |
| 4. Include unit in device parity protection |
| 5. Exclude unit from device parity protection |
| 6. Start device parity protection - RAID 6 |
| 7. Select parity optimization |
| Selection |
| - |
| F3=Exit F12=Cancel |

Figure 3-11 Working with device parity protection in DST

5. If there are insufficient drives for RAID-6, the system automatically selects RAID-6 where possible, and RAID-5 where alternately possible (Figure 3-13). If there are only two disks of a particular size on an ASP, they will remain unprotected. In the Start Device Parity Protection screen (Figure 3-12), select the RAIDsets you want to start and press Enter.

| | Start Device Parity Protection | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Select the subsystems to start device parity protection. | | | | | | | | | |
| Type cho 1=Star | Type choice, press Enter. 1=Start device parity protection | | | | | | | | |
| Option - - - - | RAID Level RAID-5 RAID-5 RAID-5 RAID-5 | Parity Set 1 2 3 4 | Serial Number OC-6200013 OC-6199036 OC-6199036 OC-6199036 | Type 571F 571B 571B 571B | Resource Name DC02 DC01 DC01 DC01 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| F3=Exit | | F12=Canc | el | | | | | | |

Figure 3-12 The Start Device Parity Protection screen

| Start Device Parity Protection Select the subsystems to start device parity protection. Some RAID-5 sets were selected due to resource limitations. Tupe choice, press Enter. | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|----|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Option - - - - - - - - | RAID Level RAID-6 RAID-5 RAID-5 RAID-5 RAID-6 | Parity Parity Set 1 2 3 4 F12=Canc | el | Type 571F 571B 571B 571B | Resource Name DCO2 DCO1 DCO1 DCO1 | | |

Figure 3-13 Start device parity protection selection screen at DST

3.4.5 Migrating to RAID-6 from unprotected disk using system service tools

The system service tools (SST) menu (Figure 3-14) is similar to the DST menu. The actions to be performed in SST are similar to those actions described for DST in the earlier sections.

| Work with Disk Configuration | |
|--|--|
| Select one of the following: | |
| Display disk configuration Add units to ASPs Work with ASP threshold Include unit in device parity protection Enable remote load source mirroring Disable remote load source mirroring Start compression on non-configured units Add units to ASPs and balance data Start device parity protection - RAID 5 Start device parity protection - RAID 6 | |
| | |
| Selection | |
| F3=Exit F12=Cancel | |

Figure 3-14 Working with the disk configuration screen in SST

3.4.6 Migrating to RAID-6 from mirrored

To change the disk protection from mirrored to RAID-6, follow these steps:

- 1. IPL to DST.
- 2. Stop Mirroring.
- 3. Start RAID-6.

3.4.7 Migrating to RAID-6 from RAID-5 protected

To change to protection from RAID-5 to RAID-6, follow these steps:

- 1. IPL to DST.
- 2. Stop RAID-5.
- 3. Start RAID-6.

3.5 Load source migration

The load source drive for a system or logical partition (LPAR) must be at least 4.19 GB for i5/OS V5R3, and at least 17.54 GB for i5/OS V5R3M5 and i5/OS V5R4M0. For a better performance, the faster 15,000 revolutions per minute (rpm) drives are recommended.

When upgrading a system to System i5, it is therefore often necessary to migrate the load source data from a small drive to a larger drive. When moving to System i5 hardware, this stage of the upgrade usually takes place on the old (preupgrade) system, but may take place on the new (postupgrade) system if both drives are supported.

The load source migration is not a part of the upgrade, and as such, is a chargeable service performed by an IBM customer engineer (CE) or IBM Business Partner.

Usual system upgrade task sequence

This is the sequence of events in a usual system upgrade task:

- 1. Migrate the Load Source.
- 2. Upgrade the operating system and install the program temporary fix (PTF).
- 3. Upgrade the system hardware.
- 4. Perform disk and I/O reconfiguration.

This sequence might have to be altered if hardware that not being supported in the release is in use. For example, the operating system might have to be upgraded and PTFs applied before load source migration because the new load source disk might not be supported in the current release.

If moving from 8xx hardware, your new load source drive might be larger than is supported on your current system. In such a situation, you must either perform the upgrade as an "unload - reload" or upgrade the load source to a 17 GB drive on your current system, then perform another load source upgrade on your target (upgraded) system to the larger drive.

3.5.1 Considerations for load source migration

Keep the following issues in mind when performing load source migration:

- The target load source (LS) drive must be equal or greater in usable capacity than the source LS drive.
- The hardware level and the operating system level of the host system for the process must support both the source LS drive and the target LS drive.
- Always perform a full system save before starting the process.
- When moving RAID-protected drives, all of the drives in a RAIDset must move together when moving between storage IOAs.
- Check the number of drive bays in the target system; they might be less than the number of bays in the source system. For example, if you are moving from model 800 to model 520, there might be six drives in the load source disk's RAIDset in model 800, but only four disk positions in the CEC of model 520.
- Draw a map of all drives that will be moved and record their serial numbers and positions. iSeries Navigator provides a useful graphical representation of disks and their positions.

When moving disks to the PCI-X IOAs from the non-PCI-X IOAs, the RAID arrangement on disk physically changes at the next IPL. This re-arrangement process is non-reversible. **Note:** The process is basically the same for a system with an LPAR as for a system without an LPAR. All you have to do is follow the relevant scenario instructions.

3.5.2 Load source migration: No disk protection

This process assumes no RAID or mirroring disk protection. Follow these steps:

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- 2. Power down the system.
- 3. Install the new drive in the system. Remove an existing drive, if necessary.
- 4. Change the mode to Manual and IPL to DST.
- 5. In the next screen (Figure 3-15), enter 3 (Use Dedicated Service Tools).

| IPL or Install the System | | |
|--|-----------------|----------|
| Select one of the following: | System: | S10E80CC |
| Perform an IPL Install the operating system Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) Perform automatic installation of the operating Save Licensed Internal Code | system | |
| Selection | | |
| - | | |
| Licensed Internal Code - Property of IBM 5722-999 Licens Internal Code (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1980, 2006. All rights reserved. US Government Users Restricted Rights Use duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP sche Contract with IBM Corp. | ed - dule | |

Figure 3-15 The IPL or Install the System screen

6. In the Dedicated Service Tools screen, sign in to DST as QSECOFR (Figure 3-16).

Note: The DST QSECOFR password is not the same as the QSECOFR user ID password, and is case-sensitive.

| | Dedicated Service | Tools (DS | I) Sign On | System: | S10E80CC |
|--|-------------------|------------|------------|---------|----------|
| Type choices, press | Enter. | | | | |
| Service tools use Service tools pas | r | <u>q</u> s | ecofr - | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Figure 3-16 Signing in to DST

7. In the Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) screen (Figure 3-17), enter 4 (Work with disk units).

| Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) System: S10E80CC |
|---|
| Select one of the following: |
| |
| 1. Perform an IPL |
| 2. Install the operating system |
| 3. Work with Licensed Internal Code |
| 4. Work with disk units |
| 5. Work with DST environment |
| 6. Select DST console mode |
| 7. Start a service tool |
| 8. Perform automatic installation of the operating system |
| 9. Work with save storage and restore storage |
| 10. Work with remote service support |
| 11. Work with system partitions |
| 12. Work with system capacity |
| 13. Work with system security |
| 14. End batch restricted state |
| |
| Selection |
| |
| |
| F3=Exit F12=Cancel |

Figure 3-17 The Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) screen

8. In the Work with Disk Units screen (Figure 3-18), enter 2 (Work with disk unit recovery).

| Work with Disk Units | |
|--|--|
| Select one of the following: | |
| 1. Work with disk configuration 2. Work with disk unit recovery | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Selection | |
| F3=Exit F12=Cancel | |

Figure 3-18 The Work with Disk Units screen

9. In the Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen (Figure 3-19), enter 6 (Disk unit problem recovery procedures).

| Work with Disk Unit Recovery | |
|--|------|
| Select one of the following: | |
| Save disk unit data Restore disk unit data Replace configured unit Assign missing unit Recover configuration Disk unit problem recovery procedures Command mathematica | |
| 7. Suspend mirrored protection | |
| 9. Copy disk unit data | |
| 10. Delete disk unit data | |
| 11. Upgrade load source utility | |
| 12. Rebuild disk unit data | |
| 13. Reclaim IOP cache storage | |
| | More |
| Coloction | |
| serection | |
| | |
| F3=Exit F11=Display disk configuration status F12=Cancel | |
| | |

Figure 3-19 The Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen

10. In the Disk Unit Problem Recovery Procedures screen (Figure 3-20), enter 1 (Initialize and format disk unit).



Figure 3-20 The Disk Unit Problem Recovery Procedures screen

- 11. In the screen that is displayed, select the new nonconfigured drive to initialize and confirm.
- 12. Return to the Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen (Figure 3-19 on page 72) and enter 9 (Copy disk unit data).
- 13. In the screen that is displayed (Figure 3-21), select the load source disk unit (disk unit 1) as the unit to copy.



Figure 3-21 The Select Copy from Disk Unit screen

14. In the Select Copy to Disk Unit Data screen (Figure 3-22), select the nonconfigured unit that you installed in step 3 on page 70 as the unit to copy to.

| | | Select Copy | y to Disk U | nit Data |
|---------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Disk be | ing copie | d: | | |
| | Seria | 1 | Resource | |
| Unit Z | SP Numbe | r Type Mode | 1 Name | Status |
| 1 | 1 68-0E | 1F75A 4326 050 | DD002 | Active |
| | | | | |
| 1=Sel | .ect | | | |
| | | | | |
| | Serial |] | Resource | |
| Option | Number | Type Model 1 | Name | Status |
| _ | 68-0E359 | 89 4327 050 1 | DD004 | Non-configured |
| _ | 68-0E388 | 97 4327 050 1 | DD003 | Non-configured |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| F3=Exit | : F11=Di | splay disk config | uration sta | tus F12=Cancel |

Figure 3-22 The Select Copy to Disk Unit Data screen

15. This displays the Copy Disk Unit Data Status screen (Figure 3-23).

| Copy Disk Unit Data Status |
|---|
| The operation to copy a disk unit will be done in several phases. |
| known. |
| |
| Phase Status |
| Stop compression (if needed) : Completed |
| Prepare disk unit |
| Start compression (if needed) |
| Come status |
| copy status |
| |
| Number of unreadable pages: |
| |

Figure 3-23 The Copy Disk Unit Data Status screen

16. Wait for copy to complete.

17. Power off the system.

- From the DST main screen (Figure 3-17 on page 71), enter 7 (Start a service tool),
- Or on the Service tools screen, enter 7 (Operator panel functions).

When you see the screen in Figure 3-24, press F10 to power off.

Operator Panel Functions RCHASM05 System: IPL source: 2 (1=A, 2=B or 3=D) (1=Manual, 2=Normal, 3=Secure or 4=Auto) IPL mode: 1 Press Enter to change the IPL attributes and return to the main DST menu. Press F8 to set the IPL attributes and restart the system. Machine processing will be ended and the system will be restarted. Press F10 to set the IPL attributes and power off the system. Machine processing will be ended and the system will be powered off. Press F12 to return to the main DST menu without changing IPL attributes. F3=Exit F8=Restart F10=Power off F12=Cancel

Figure 3-24 The Operator Panel Functions screen

18. Find the old load source disk unit and slide the disk unit out of the system.

19. Move the new load source disk to the load source position.

20. If you removed a drive in step 3 on page 70, reinstall it.

21.Perform an IPL on the system.

3.5.3 Load source migration: Mirrored system

This section describes load source migration of a mirrored system.

Notes: Ensure that you record the serial numbers and the locations at relevant points.

Be *very* careful when repositioning disks. Wrong placement of disks can lead to unpredictable results and might require a full system reload from the backup tapes.

Follow these steps:

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- Locate the load source unit (Unit 1) and its mirrored pair, and make a note of the locations and the serial numbers of the drives.
- 3. Power down the system.
- 4. Install the two new disk drives. Note the serial numbers of the drives and their positions.
- 5. Perform an IPL in manual mode to the DST.

- 6. Suspend the load source mate as follows:
 - a. On the IPL or the Install the System screen (Figure 3-25), enter 3 (Use dedicated Service Tools).

```
IPL or Install the System

System:

Select one of the following:

1. Perform an IPL

2. Install the operating system

3. Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST)

4. Perform automatic installation of the operating system

5. Save Licensed Internal Code

Selection

-

Licensed Internal Code - Property of IBM 5722-999 Licensed

Internal Code (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1980, 2004. All

rights reserved. US Government Users Restricted Rights -

Use duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP schedule

Contract with IBM Corp.
```

Figure 3-25 The IPL or Install the System screen

b. Sign in to the DST (Figure 3-26).





c. On the DST main menu (Use Dedicated Service Tools screen shown in Figure 3-27), enter 4 (Work With Disk Units).



Figure 3-27 The DST main menu

d. On the Work with Disk Units screen (Figure 3-28), enter 2 (Work with disk unit recovery).

Work with Disk Units

Select one of the following:

- 1. Work with disk configuration
- 2. Work with disk unit recovery



e. On the Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen (Figure 3-29), enter **7** (Suspend mirrored protection).



Figure 3-29 The Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen

f. At the Suspend Mirrored Protection screen (Figure 3-30), select unit 1 (the load source mate).

| | | | Sus | pend | Mirrored | 1 Protection | ו | |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|--|------------------------------|----------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| Type 1: | e optio =Suspen | n, pr d Mir | ess Enter. rored Protec | tion | | | | |
| орт — — — | Unit 1 2 2 | ASP 1 1 | Serial Number 75-0CE64B0 75-0D7B2A2 75-0D7EDB4 | Type 6717 6718 6718 | Model 050 050 050 | Resource Name DD001 DD003 DD002 | Status Active Active Active | |
| F3= | Exit | | F5=Refresh | | F12=Can | ncel | | |

Figure 3-30 The Suspend Mirrored Protection screen

- 7. Copy the load source disk unit data to one of the new drives as follows:
 - a. At the Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen (Figure 3-31), enter 6 (Copy Disk Unit Data).



b. At the Select Copy from Disk Unit screen (Figure 3-32), select unit 1.



Figure 3-32 The Select Copy from Disk Unit screen

c. Select one of the new drives on the Select Copy to Disk Unit screen (Figure 3-33) and note the serial number.

| | | | : | Selec | t Cop | oy to Dis⊧ | < Unit [|)ata | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------|--|
| Disk b | eing | copied: | | | | | | | |
| Unit 1 | ASP 1 | Serial Number 75-0CF43 | - A4 (| Гуре 6717 | Mode 05(| Resour el Name D DD006 | rce S | Status Active | |
| 1=Se | lect | | | | | | | | |
| Option <u>1</u> - | Ser Nur 68 68 | rial mber -0C82161 -0C231E9 | Typa 6718 6718 | ≘ Mo 3 0 3 0 | del 50 50 | Resource Name DD004 DD005 | Stat Non- Non- | configured | |
| F3=Exi | t i | F11=Displ | ay di | isk c | onfig | guration s | status | F12=Cancel | |

Figure 3-33 The Select Copy to Disk Unit Data screen

- d. Press F10 to accept the warning "Other disk unit will become missing".
- e. Press Enter to confirm the copy.

The Copy Disk Unit Data Status screen (Figure 3-34) appears.

```
      Copy Disk Unit Data Status

      The operation to copy a disk unit will be done in several phases.

      The phases are listed here and the status will be indicated when known.

      Phase
      Status

      Stop compression (if needed)
      Status

      Stop compression (if needed)
      3 % Completed

      Prepare disk unit
      3 % Complete

      Start compression (if needed)
      Status

      Number of unreadable pages:
      Status
```

Figure 3-34 The Copy Disk Unit Data Status screen

- Return to the DST main screen (Figure 3-35) and power down the system (or partition) as follows:
 - a. Enter 7 (Start a service tool).

```
Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST)
                                                           System:
Select one of the following:
     1. Perform an IPL
    2. Install the operating system
    3. Work with Licensed Internal Code
    4. Work with disk units
    5. Work with DST environment
    6. Select DST console mode
    7. Start a service tool
    8. Perform automatic installation of the operating system
    9. Work with save storage and restore storage
    10. Work with remote service support
    11. Work with system partitions
    13. Work with system security
    14. End batch restricted state
Selection
        F12=Cancel
F3=Exit
```

Figure 3-35 The DST main screen

b. At the screen shown in Figure 3-36, enter 7 (Operator panel functions).



Figure 3-36 The Start a Service Tool screen

c. On the Operator Panel Functions screen (Figure 3-37), press F10 to power off.

```
Operator Panel Functions
                                                           System:
IPL source: 2
                 (1=A, 2=B or 3=D)
             1
                (1=Manual, 2=Normal, 3=Secure or 4=Auto)
IPL mode:
Press Enter to change the IPL attributes and return
  to the main DST menu.
Press F8 to set the IPL attributes and restart the system.
  Machine processing will be ended and the system will be
  restarted.
Press F10 to set the IPL attributes and power off the system.
  Machine processing will be ended and the system will be
  powered off.
Press F12 to return to the main DST menu without changing
  IPL attributes.
F3=Exit
         F8=Restart
                       F10=Power off
                                       F12=Cancel
```

Figure 3-37 The Operator Panel Functions screen

- 9. Remove the load source drive (the serial number and location you noted in step 2 on page 75) from the system.
- Move the new load source drive (the serial number and location you noted in step 7 on page 79) to that slot.
- 11.Remove the old load source mate (the serial number you noted in step 2 on page 75).
- 12. Move the new load source mate to that slot (the serial number and location you noted in step 7 on page 79).
- 13. Power on the system (or partition) in manual mode.

- 14. Replace the configured unit as follows:
 - a. Sign on to the DST.
 - b. Select the option for Work with Disk Units.
 - c. Select the option for Work with Disk Unit Recovery.
 - d. At the screen shown in Figure 3-38, enter 3 (Replace configured unit).

| Work with Disk Unit Recovery | |
|--|------|
| Select one of the following: | |
| 1. Save disk unit data | |
| 2. Restore disk unit data | |
| 3. Replace configured unit | |
| 4. Assign missing unit | |
| 5. Recover configuration | |
| 6. Disk unit problem recovery procedures | |
| 7. Suspend mirrored protection | |
| 8. Resume mirrored protection | |
| 9. Copy disk unit data | |
| 10. Delete disk unit data | |
| 11. Upgrade load source utility | |
| 12. Rebuild disk unit data | |
| 13. Reclaim IOP cache storage | |
| | More |
| Selection | |
| - | |
| F3=Exit F11=Display disk configuration status F12=Cancel | |

Figure 3-38 The Work with Disk Unit Recovery screen

e. Enter 1 next to the suspended Unit 1 disk unit at the screen shown in Figure 3-39.

| | Select | Configured U | nit to Repla | ice | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Type option, 1=Select | press Enter. | | | | |
| OPT Unit A 1* | Serial SP Number 1 75-0CE64B0 | Type Model 6717 050 | Resource Name DD001 | Status Suspended | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| F3=Exit | F5=Refresh | F12=Cancel | | | |

Figure 3-39 The Select Configured Unit to Replace screen

f. At the Select Replacement Unit screen (Figure 3-40), enter 1 next to the newly installed disk unit, and press Enter to confirm.



Figure 3-40 The Select Replacement Unit screen

The status is displayed in the Replace Disk Unit Data Status screen (Figure 3-41).

```
Replace Disk Unit Data Status
The operation to replace a disk unit from the selected disk
units will be done in several phases. The phases are listed
here and the status will be indicated when known.
Phase
                                       Status
                                       Completed
Stop compression (if needed) . . . . . :
Prepare disk unit . . . .
                                        0 % Complete
                         . . . . . . . .
Start compression (if needed)
1
Number of unreadable pages:
Wait for next display or press F16 for DST main menu
```

Figure 3-41 The Replace Disk Unit Data Status screen

- 15. Check the configuration by performing the following tasks:
 - a. From the DST main menu, select the option for Work with Disk Units.
 - b. Select the option for Work with Disk Unit Configuration.
 - c. Select the option for Display Disk Unit Status.
 - d. In the Display Disk Configuration Status screen shown in Figure 3-42, check whether the load source (unit 1) is one of the new (larger) disks you require.

| F | | D | ispla | y Disk | Configurat | ion Status |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------------|--------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| | | Serial | | | Resource | |
| ASP | Unit | Number | Type | Model | Name | Status |
| 1 | 1 | 60-000161 | 6710 | 050 | 0004 | Mirrored |
| | 1 | 68-0C22101 | 6718 | 050 | DD004 | Resuming |
| | 2 | 75-0D7B2A2 | 6718 | 050 | DD003 | Active |
| | 2 | 75-0D7EDB4 | 6718 | 050 | DD002 | Active |
| | | | | | | |
| Pres | s Enter | to continue | • | | | |
| F3=E F11= | xit Disk co | F5=Refre nfiguration | sh capac: | ity I | F9=Display F12=Cancel | disk unit details |

Figure 3-42 The Display Disk Configuration Status screen

16.Perform an IPL on the system.

3.5.4 Load source migration: RAID system

These scenarios are available for load source to migrate on a RAID-protected system:

- No spare disk slots anywhere in the system
- Sufficient spare disk slots to start a new RAIDset with the new drives
- Insufficient spare disk slots to start a new RAIDset with the new drives

Load source migrate RAID system: No spare disk slots in the system

If no spare disk slots are available in the system, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- 2. Perform an IPL to the DST.
- 3. Switch off RAID.
- 4. Follow the basic procedure for nonprotected systems.
- 5. Restart RAID.
- 6. Perform an IPL on the system.

Load source migrate RAID system: Spare disk slots available

Check the number of RAIDsets under the load source IOA. If more than one, it means that one or more RAIDsets can be physically moved to another IOA but the RAIDset must be kept together as a set under the new IOA.

Follow these steps:

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- 2. Power down the system.
- 3. Move the nonload source disk RAIDset to another IOA. (Ensure that you move all of the disks in the RAIDset and only the disks in that RAIDset).
- 4. Install the new disks in the vacated slots.
- 5. Start RAID on the new disks.
- 6. Perform disk copy from the load source disk to one of the new disks.
- 7. Add the remaining new disks into the system ASP.
- 8. Remove the rest of the old load source RAIDset from configuration by using the "Remove disks from configuration" option in the Work with ASP Configuration screen.
- 9. Power down the system.
- 10. Physically remove the old load source disk and its RAIDset from the system.
- 11. Move the new load source disk to the load source position.
- 12.Perform an IPL on the system.

Load source migrate: Insufficient spare disk slots in the system

If there are spare disk slots in the system but the numbers are insufficient to allow the installation of a new RAIDset (for example, three or four, depending on the storage IOA):

- 1. Perform a full system save.
- 2. Perform an IPL to the DST.
- 3. Switch off RAID.
- 4. Install the new drive.
- 5. Follow the basic procedure described in the earlier section (for unprotected systems).
- 6. Restart RAID.

3.5.5 RAID-5 arrangement on Peripheral Component Interconnect-X I/O adapters

On January 2003, new PCI-X RAID I/O adapters were announced. These new IOAs support a new form of RAID-5. The new format provides significant performance improvements over the existing PCI RAID IOAs. This also applies to the new i5 servers.

The existing RAID-5 arrangement had the disk platter as one subarray that was split into two sections: the first part of the outer ring of the disk for user data, and the inner ring for RAID data. As seen in Figure 3-43, the Read/Write arm must move across the entire platter even when the disk is partially full. This increases the seek time for data access and consequently the overall response time.



Figure 3-43 The existing RAID-5 arrangement

Figure 3-44 shows the new RAID-5 available with the new PCI-X RAID disk IOAs. In this configuration, the disk platter is subdivided into 16 subarrays. Each subarray has a user data area and a RAID data area. You can see that the Read/Write arm only has to move across a fraction of the disk platter at low levels of capacity. This vastly improves the seek time and consequently the response time.



Figure 3-44 RAID-5 arrangement PCI-X RAID IOAs

This new RAID arrangement is implemented by the IOA as soon as any drive under it is started. The major implication of this setup becomes apparent during upgrades. Here are the two scenarios where the new RAID is implemented:

- When "RAIDed" disks are moved from under the control of an existing PCI RAID IOA to a system unit or expansion unit containing PCI-X RAID Disk IOAs
- When a new PCI-X RAID Disk IOA replaces an existing PCI RAID Disk IOA controlling "RAIDed" disks in an existing system unit or expansion tower

There is no user control over the change to the RAID arrangement. Because the system runs an IPL for the first time after the new PCI-X IOAs are in place, the IOA detects the old RAID format. During the IPL, the old RAID format is removed and replaced with the new RAID format. During this period, the drives that are being reformatted are not protected. Therefore, ensure that full system backups have been taken.



4

System i5 consoles in i5/OS V5R4

This chapter describes the different console types that are available for the System i5 environment: Twinaxial Console, Operations Console (direct), Operations Console (local area network), Hardware Management Console (HMC) 5250, and Thin Console.

This chapter also provides a guide for setting up and maintaining the Thin Console, general information about the console card locations on System i5 servers, and the use of service functions 65+11 to change the console type.

4.1 Introduction to the consoles on System i5 servers

This section describes the different types of consoles that are available to manage your System i5 server:

- Twinaxial console
- Operations console (direct-attached or LAN-attached)
- ► HMC 5250
- Thin console

4.1.1 Twinax console

Originally, only one console type was available, a twinax terminal connected to a twinax card that provided a 5250 console interface to the System i5 server. Although the twinax terminal has been withdrawn from the market, the twinax adapter cards remain available for order on the new 5xx and 5xx+ systems.

The twinax console can still be used on a stand-alone system, or as a console for a system partition. However, it no longer allows for logical partition (LPAR) configuration and management on the new 5xx models. (HMC is a prerequisite for LPAR on any 5xx system.)

4.1.2 Operations console (direct-attached or LAN-attached)

An alternative to the twinax console was introduced with the operations console. The first generation could only be directly attached to a serial port. This is referred to as a direct-attached operations console. Later, support was added to connect the PC to a dedicated LAN adapter card. This is commonly known as a LAN console.

The Operations console runs on a PC, as part of the iSeries Access for Windows.[™] A green screen console session is provided by the 5250 emulation function of either iSeries Access or IBM Personal Communications. You can also use iSeries Navigator for management functions. Operator panel functions to a nonpartitioned system or to the primary partition are available through a graphical user interface (GUI). The direct-attached Operations console requires an additional special cable.

LAN console allows console sessions to multiple systems or partitions at the same time. More than one PC that is configured as a LAN console can connect to a single system or partition. However, only one can take control of the console session at a given moment.

Both direct-attached and LAN-attached consoles allow incoming dial-in connections to the PC, which facilitates remote access and system management.

4.1.3 The Hardware Management Console

This topic describes the virtual console terminal emulation functionality of the HMC. For more information about HMC installation and configuration, system management, remote management (Web-based System Manager (WebSM) and SSH), and Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI), refer to *Logical Partitions on System i5: A Guide to Planning and Configuring LPAR with HMC on System i*, SG24-8000.

Using the Hardware Management Console as a partition console

With the introduction of the 5xx models, the LPAR configuration and management functions were removed from the iSeries service tools and transferred to the HMC. The HMC performs logical partitioning functions, service functions, and various system management functions. It is a prerequisite to LPAR configuration and Capacity on Demand in any System i5 environment.

The HMC connects to the managed system through an Ethernet LAN connection to port HMC1 or HMC2 of the Service Processor (SP) in the CEC. A virtual console terminal can be configured to run on the HMC for each partition, thus reducing the requirement for extra hardware in each partition. One of these console types is 5250.

Configure the 5250 partition consoles on System i5 servers in the following ways:

- Use only the HMC as the partition console.
- Use the HMC as the partition console, and define a twinax console device or operations console device as an alternate console device for a partition.
- Not use the HMC as a partition console, and specify a twinax console or operations console as the partition console.

When you use the HMC as the partition console, connect to the 5250 console locally or remotely.

Connecting to the 5250 console locally

To open a console session in the HMC, perform the following tasks:

- 1. In the navigation area, select the managed system and select Server and Partition \rightarrow Server Management.
- 2. The Server and Partition: Server Management pane is displayed. Expand the Partitions folder, select the desired partition, and right-click. This gives you the option to open either a dedicated 5250 console or a shared 5250 console.

If you open a shared 5250 console, another user can open a 5250 emulation window and share the session with you. Because this is really one session being shared between users, there is no control switching mechanism. Everything you type in the shared session is visible to the other user.

Connecting to the 5250 console remotely

If your HMC is located in the machine room, the use of the HMC as the partition console means that you have to go over to the machine room whenever you require a console session. To circumvent this and facilitate system management, you can use the remote connection functionality that is available through the following emulators:

- ▶ IBM iSeries Access PC5250 emulator, V5, R3 with PTF SI13587 or later
- IBM Personal Communications 5250 emulator, V5.7 or later
- iSeries Access for Linux emulator, V5.2.0-1.4 or later

The HMC user ID and password are required to connect to the console session. For configuration instructions and information about remote security and the HMC firewall, refer to the topic *System i: Managing the HMC 5250 console* from the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center, which is available on the Web at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/topic/iphb8/iphb8.pdf

HMC and server firmware code-level update

Your HMC is a critical part of your hardware configuration. It is recommended that you keep both the server firmware level and the HMC machine code up to date.

Server firmware (Licensed Internal Code)

The server firmware is the part of the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) that enables hardware. It is stored in the Service Processor. The Service Processor stores a permanent copy ("p" side) and a temporary copy ("t" side). It is recommended that you run the managed server from the "t" side.

The firmware level is displayed as SF*XXX_YYY*, where *XXX* is the release level, and *YYY* is the fix level. Firmware fixes are displayed as MH*nnnnn*.

When you upgrade to a new release, the process is always disruptive; that is, the managed system and not just the partitions have to be shut down and restarted in order to accept the new release level. The fix updates within the same release *can be*, but are not always concurrent. It is recommended that after you have started an update or upgrade process, you do not interrupt it or perform any other tasks.

For details about the update or upgrade process, refer to the topic "obtaining firmware updates" in the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center, which is available on the Web at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/topic/ipha5/fix_serv_firm_k
ick.htm

Note: The HMC machine code must be equal to or greater than the server firmware level. The sequence in which you install fixes or updates is very important. Install the HMC updates *before* you install the server firmware updates in order to ensure that the HMC machine code can handle the server firmware level that you are applying. See "Supported combinations of server firmware and HMC code" on page 96.

You can use either the HMC to manage, download, and install your firmware level and fixes (which is the default setting) or the program temporary fix (PTF) functions of the i5/OS. These options are referred to as "Update policy set to HMC" versus "Update policy set to operating system".

If you decide to set the update policy to the operating system, you must define one of your logical partitions as the *service partition*. After changing the update policy, the next IPL of the service partition will cause the server firmware level on the managed system to be flashed with the current level of the server firmware portion of the LIC on the service partition. This process is known as LS Flash Synching (Firmware Load Source to SP Flash synchronization).

Therefore, it is important that you check the current level of firmware on the service partition before you make the change, and ensure that it is at the same level or at a higher level than the server firmware running on the managed system. Also consider the consequences in the event of a scratch install of the service partition. To avoid these situations, it is recommended that you set the update policy to HMC instead of operating system.

The only situation where you will be forced to change the update policy from HMC to operating system and designate a service partition is when you go from a system that was previously managed by an HMC to a system that is no longer managed by an HMC. You will receive the following error message to signal this situation:

"This partition does not have the authority to perform the requested function. Verify that this partition has service authority. If the problem persists after granting the partition service authority, then contact your service support structure." Refer to the following sites to download server firmware fixes:

► iSeries Recommended Fixes - Server Firmware: Update Policy Set to Operating System

http://www-912.ibm.com/s_dir/slkbase.nsf/c32447c09fb9a1f186256a6c00504227/60499 2740f846a4986256fd3006029b5?0penDocument

► iSeries Recommended Fixes - Server Firmware: Update Policy Set to HMC

http://www-912.ibm.com/s_dir/slkbase.nsf/ibmscdirect/E58D7BBF0EAC9A2786256EAD00
5F54D8

HMC machine code

An overview of the supported HMC machine code levels is available at:

https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/hmc/home.html

Figure 4-1 shows the HMC machine code levels.

| Support for UNIX | servers and M | idrange servers | sole | | | |
|--|---|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| HMC corrective | service suppor | t | | Additional resources | | |
| These second deliver | | | | → POWER5 code matrix | | |
| Hardware Manager servers, Online me | ment Console (HN dia ordering, inst | AC) for both POWERS tallation instructions | and POWER4™ and related technical | → HMC best practices | | |
| information are als | o provided. | | | \rightarrow i5, iSeries support | | |
| Your IBM support of | enter provides te | echnical support for t | he HMC. | → UNIX servers suppor | | |
| HMC products fo | or servers with | POWER5 processo | rs | → Microcode downloads | | |
| Version | Releases | | | System p | | |
| HMC Version 6 | HMC 6.1 | | | | | |
| HMC Version 5 | HMC 5.2.1 | HMC 5.2 | HMC 5.1 | Sign up for email | | |
| HMC Version 4 | HMC 4.5 | Older versions | 3 | corrective service. | | |
| | | | | → System p | | |
| HMC products fo | or servers with | POWER4 processo | rs | → System i | | |
| Version | Releases | | | | | |
| HMC Version 3.3 | HMC 3.3.7 and | lower releases | | | | |
| HMC Version 3.2 LPP-based | HMC 3.2 and lo | wer versions | | | | |
| Note: HMC 3.2.x a versions support P machine code vers 3.2.6, the highest | e HMC code. These . To upgrade to the e upgraded to HMC | | | | | |
| End-of-Service Re supported, effective | minder: HMC 3.2 ve August 31, 200 | and lower products a | are no longer | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| BIOS updates | | | | | | |
| This site provides require a BIOS up provided for HMC | lels (PCs) that S updates are <u>not</u> · HMC functionality. | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Figure 4-1 HMC machine code levels

Select the release level, and download either the fixes for that release (corrective service download) or get a release update (recovery media download). Installation instructions are also available. Here is an example for HMC machine code 5.2.1:

Corrective service download (Figure 4-2), which is available at:

https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/hmc/power5/download/v521.Updat e.html



Figure 4-2 HMC corrective service downloads

Recovery media download (Figure 4-3 on page 95)

https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/hmc/power5/download/v521.Recov
ery.html

The *HMC Recovery DVD*, which is used to update your code to a new release, is a bootable image and contains the HMC Base Code. If you have to scratch install the HMC machine code, you require the recovery DVD for the release installed on the HMC. Before you start an upgrade, ensure that you have performed the following tasks:

- Back up the managed system's profile data.
- Back up the critical console information (this enables you to go back to the previous level of machine code in case something goes wrong when upgrading).
- Record HMC configuration information (schedule operations) and remote command status.
- Save the upgrade data.

Upgrade data enables you to restore the HMC configuration after the upgrade. The upgrade data is stored in a designated disk partition on the HMC. Only one version of the upgrade data can be stored at a time, so perform this operation immediately before the upgrade.

For details about the upgrade process, refer to:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/topic/ipha5/fixeshmc_ upgrades.htm



Figure 4-3 HMC Recovery DVD download

Supported combinations of server firmware and HMC code

Figure 4-4 shows the supported combinations of server firmware and HMC code.

Note: The HMC machine code must be equal to or greater than the server firmware level. The sequence in which you install fixes or updates is important. Install the HMC updates before you install the server firmware updates to ensure that the HMC machine code can handle the server firmware level that you are applying,

| | POWER 5 system firm | POWER 5 system firmware levels (iSeries and pSeries) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| HMC levels | 240 Release | 235 Release | 230 Release | 225 Release | 222 Release | 220 Release | 210 Release | | | | | |
| HMC V5R2 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 240 | Supported HMC and system firmware combination. | Supported HMC and system firmware combination. FW Release covered under general FW support thru 10/2006 | Supported HMC and system firmware combination. FW Release covered under general FW support thru 12/2006. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V5R1 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 235 | Not a supported combination. | Recommended and supported HMC and system firmware combination. FW Release covered under general FW support thru 10/2006 | Supported HMC and system firmware combination. FW Release covered under general FW support thru 12/2006. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V4R5 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 230 | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Recommended and supported HMC and system firmware combination. FW Release covered under general FW support thru 12/2006. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V4R4 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 225 | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V4R3 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 222 | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V4R2 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 220 | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Service Packs no longer provided. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| HMC V4R1 Minimum HMC Level Required to Support POWER5 Release Level 210 | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Not a supported combination. | Service Packs no longer provided. | | | | | |
| Matrix Key: Latest Rele | ase Level <mark>Maximun</mark> | n Stability Release L | evel Reduced Fix sup | port End of | Service Pack | support | | | | | | |
| Service Packs no longer provided. | = Service Packs no l recommended Rel | onger provided. IBM re ease Level. | commends updating yo | our firmware and | d HMC to a | | | | | | | |

Figure 4-4 Supported combinations of server firmware and HMC code

Check for updated information about the supported combinations server firmware and the HMC code levels at the POWER5 code matrix Web site:

http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/power5cm/supportedcode.html

For more information about getting and installing fixes and updates for HMC code and server firmware, refer to the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center or download the PDF at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/topic/ipha5/ipha5.pdf

Receive updates on the latest fix levels through the subscription service for System i5 at:

http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/subscriptions/iqvcmjd

4.2 Thin Console

Thin Console is a new type of console. It is available only for selected *nonpartitioned* System i5, 9405-520, 9406-520, and 9406-550. These models must be running i5/OS V5R3 or later and a firmware level of SF240 or later.

The Thin Console was designed to deliver a low-cost and easy-setup alternative for console function on nonpartitioned systems that do not require an HMC. It provides a 5250 console session to the system. The cable connects directly from the device Ethernet port to the SP's HMC1 or HMC2 Ethernet port on the server, thus not taking any IOA/IOP (input/output adapter/input/output processor) slot. The console type is displayed as HMC to the i5/OS. Coexistence of a Thin Console and an HMC is *not* supported.

The Thin Console is a Neoware c50 thin client running a customized Linux image, which includes an IBM 5250 emulator. It boots from internal flash memory. To update the code or reinstall the Linux image, download the Linux image from the Web as a .zip file and extract it to a Universal Serial Bus (USB) memory stick. Because the image does not take up much space, the minimum requirement for the memory stick is only 128 MB.

You cannot install separate fixes to the code. Any update must be performed by overwriting the entire Linux image with the new one.

When you order a system with a Thin Console, it does not automatically include a display. Therefore, either add it to your order or provide one yourself.



Figure 4-5 shows a System i5 Thin Console.

Figure 4-5 System i5 Thin Console

4.2.1 Thin Console installation

The Thin Console is supported only on selected *nonpartitioned* System i5, 9405-520, 9406-520, and 9406-550. These models must be running i5/OS V5R3 or later and a firmware level of SF240 or later.

4.2.2 Specifications

The Thin Console is a Neoware c50 thin client running a customized Linux image, which includes an IBM 5250 emulator.

The Linux software image does *not* include support for printing or for programmable or scriptable interfaces (application programming interfaces (APIs), commands, and scripts).

The Neoware c50 thin client contains:

- ▶ 1 VIA Eden Processor @ 400 MHz
- ► 64 MB of flash storage
- ► 128 MB of DDR SDRAM memory
- 1 serial port (D-Sub 9-Pin Male)
- ► 1 parallel port (D-Sub 25-Pin Female)
- ▶ 1 VGA port, with support for up to 1200x1600 @ 60 Hz
- ► 1 PS/2 keyboard port
- ► 1 PS/2 mouse port
- 2 USB 2.0 ports (type A)

The documentation for the Neoware c50 thin clients with their generic NeoLinux 3.0 load, *NeoLinux Thin Clients User Manual,* is available at:

http://www.neoware.com/docs/manuals/um_neolinux_30_20040630.pdf

The Thin Console has two interactive user interfaces:

- A 5250 screen
 - When connecting to the server, it displays the connection status.
 - After successful connection, it displays the server's 5250 console session.
- A GUI-type configuration screen for the keyboard and monitor called the ezConnect -Neoware Connection Manager

4.2.3 Thin Console 5250 emulation screen

Figure 4-6 on page 99 shows the connection status screen, which displays console information, server information, and connection status.

```
Thin Console 1.0.0-142
    Console Information
      Ethernet: 00:E0:C5:56:0E:FB
      IP:
               192.168.3.1
      Gateway: 192.168.3.1
      Subnet:
                255.255.255.0
    Server Information
      IP:
                        192.168.3.147
      Type-Model:
                       9405-520
      Serial:
                        10E80CC
      State:
                        FFFF Server state is unknown
      Reference code:
    Connection status
      10.00 (of 100) Searching for server at Ethernet port HMC1 or HMC2
    F8=Reset search for server
                                          »
                                                    đ
                                                                           1/1
1 localhost
```

Figure 4-6 Thin console connection status screen

Under Server Information, the State field indicates the power and runtime states as they are detected by the Thin Console. The State field contains a numeric status code and a description. Table 4-1 lists the codes and their meanings.

Table 4-1 Server information state codes

| Numeric code | Code names | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| 0 x00 | CEC_NOT_RUNNING | "POWERED OFF" |
| 0x01 | CEC_IPLING_PHYP_NOT_READY_FOR_HMC | "STARTING" |
| 0x02 | CEC_IPLING_PHYP_READY_FOR_HMC | "STARTING" |
| 0x03 | CEC_TERMINATION | "TERMINATING" |
| 0x04 | CEC_DUMPING | "FIRMWARE DUMP" |
| 0x05 | CEC_POWER_ON_TRANSITION | "STARTING" |
| 0x06 | CEC_POWER_OFF_TRANSITION | "POWERING OFF" |
| 0 ×07 | CEC_POWER_OFF_IN_PROCESS | "POWERING OFF" |
| 0x08 | CEC_TRANSITION_TO_IPL | "STARTING" |
| 0x09 | CEC_TRANSITION_TO_DUMP | "FIRMWARE DUMP" |
| 0x0A | CEC_TRANSITION_TO_TERMINATION | "TERMINATING" |
| 0x0F | CEC_PHYP_FUNCTIONAL | "FIRMWARE READY" |

| 0xFFFF | CEC_RUN_STATE_UNKNOWN | "UNKNOWN" | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------|--|
| Any other state | n/a | "UNKNOWN" | |

Under Connection Status, the server connection status code indicates the progress of the connection between the Thin Console and the server. It is a four-digit code *XX.YY*, where *XX* is the major connection status (00-99) and *YY* is the minor connection status (00-99).

Table 4-2 lists the status codes and their description. During a successful connection, these codes must progress from 0 to 100.

| Numeric code | Code names | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------|--|
| 00 | NO_CONNECTION | "SEARCHING FOR SERVICE PROCESSOR" |
| 10 | CONNECTION_TO_HWS | "SEARCHING FOR SERVICE PROCESSOR" |
| 20 | CMD_SOCKET_UP | "SERVICE PROCESSOR FOUND" |
| 30 | STREAM_SOCKET_UP | "VALIDATING SYSTEM POWER™ STATE" |
| 40 | PHYP_UP | "FIRMWARE READY" |
| 50 | SERIAL_CONNECTION_UP | "COMMUNICATION INITIALIZED" |
| 60 | LINK_LEVEL_ECHO_UP | "COMMUNICATION ACTIVE" |
| 70 | ICMP_ECHO_POLLING_UP | "IP COMMUNICATION ACTIVE" |
| 80 | HWS_IS_ECHOING | "IP COMMUNICATION ACTIVE" |
| 90 | GOT_INIT_COND_RESPONSE | "OPERATING SYSTEM CONSOLE INITIALIZED" |
| 93 | CONNECTED_TO_SLIC | "OPERATING SYSTEM CONSOLE ACTIVE" |
| 97 | NEGOTIATING | "NEGOTIATING" |
| 99 | WAITING_FOR_SCREEN | "WAITING FOR SCREEN DATA" |
| 100 | PASS_DATA_THROUGH | The user should see the i5/OS 5250 data stream when at this state. |

 Table 4-2
 Server connection status codes

4.2.4 Neoware Connection Manager

Figure 4-7 shows the GUI screen for the configuration of the keyboard and the monitor. Use Ctrl+Alt+End to switch from the 5250 screen to the configuration screen. To go back to the 5250 screen, double-click the **5250 Console** connection.



Figure 4-7 GUI configuration screen

4.2.5 Physical installation and cabling

On the System i5 server side, you do not have to install any hardware. The Thin Console connects directly to one of the HMC ports of the Service Processor (SP), instead of connecting to an IOA card. Perform the following tasks to install the Thin Console:

- 1. Verify the hardware that came with your order. It must contain the Neoware c50 thin client, a keyboard, a mouse, and a power cable (and optionally, a display).
- 2. Connect the display, keyboard, mouse, power cable, and Ethernet cable to the ports on the Thin Console (Figure 4-8).



Figure 4-8 Thin Console back view

- 3. Plug in the monitor and power it on.
- 4. Plug in the Thin Console. It automatically powers on. It boots from the pre-installed Linux software image; you do not have to install any software.
- 5. Select the keyboard language and press Enter (Figure 4-9 on page 103).

| | 15 Common Quetnian |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. US English | 15. Germany hus er tan |
| 2. UK English | 16. German/Austrian - presuro |
| 3. UK English - preEuro | 17. Swiss German |
| 4. Banish | 18. Italian |
| 5. Danish - preEuro | 19. Italian - preEuro |
| 6. Dutch | 20. Norwegian |
| 7. Dutch - preEuro | 21. Portuguese |
| 8. Finnish | 22. Portuguese - preEuro |
| 9. Finnish - preEuro | 23. Spanish |
| 10. French | 24. Spanish – preEuro |
| 11. Canadian French | 25. LA Spanish |
| 12. Belgiun/French | 26. Suedish |
| 13. Belgium/French - preEuro | 27. Suedish - preEuro |
| 14. Suiss French | |
| | |
| Select a keyboard language: | |
| | |

Figure 4-9 Thin Console: Select a keyboard

6. Plug the other end of the Ethernet cable directly into either one of the HMC ports on the server. The ports are labeled HMC1 and HMC2. Although it is recommended that you attach the Thin Console before powering on the server, the console session must be able to connect regardless of the connection sequence.

Note: Do not attach another console device to the remaining HMC port. When you use a Thin Console, only one HMC port on the FSP can be connected at a time.

7. The 5250 session comes up and displays the progress of the connection status. Figure 4-10 shows connection status 10.*nn*.

| - | | Thin Console 1.0.0-142 |
|---|--|---|
| | Console Information Ethernet: 00:E0:CS IP: 192.168 | 5:56:0E:FB .3.1 |
| | Subnet: 255.255 | .255.0 |
| | Server Information | |
| | IP: | 192.168.3.147 |
| | Type-Model: | 9405-520 |
| | Serial: | 10E80CC |
| | State: Reference code: | FFFF Server state 1s unknown |
| | Connection status | |
| | 10.00 (of 100) Seam | cching for server at Ethernet port HMC1 or HMC2 |
| | | |
| | F8=Reset search for s | 3erver |

Figure 4-10 Thin Console connection status 10.nn

8. On the next screen (Figure 4-11), authenticate the device to the FSP by entering the HMC access password. The default password is abc123. This authentication ensures protection for the FSP network interfaces. After being entered, the access password is stored locally on the Thin Console, so that subsequent connections to the same FSP do not require you to re-enter it.

```
Thin Console 1.0.0-142
Console Information
 Ethernet: 00:E0:C5:56:0E:FB
 IP: 192.168.3.1
 Gateway: 192.168.3.1
  Subnet: 255.255.255.0
Server Information
 IP:
                  192.168.3.147
 Type-Model:
                  9405-520
 Serial:
                  10E80CC
                   FFFF Server state is unknown
 State:
 Reference code:
Connection status
 10.01 (of 100) Searching for server at Ethernet port HMC1 or HMC2
1 - Enter HMC access password:
F8=Reset search for server
```

Figure 4-11 Thin Console connection status: Authentication

 If you have not done so already, power on the System i5. The following figures (Figure 4-12, Figure 4-13 on page 105, and Figure 4-14 on page 105) show the Thin Console cycling through some of the different connection states.

Figure 4-12 shows the Thin Console connection status 20.nn.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: FFFF Server state is unknown

Reference code:

Connection status

20.00 (of 100) Server found
```

Figure 4-12 Thin Console connection status 20.nn

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 000F Server firmware ready

Reference code:

Connection status

40.01 (of 100) Server firmware is ready to communicate
```

Figure 4-13 shows Thin Console connection status 40.nn.

Figure 4-13 Thin Console connection status 40.nn

Figure 4-14 shows Thin Console connection status 60.nn.

| Server Information | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| IP: | 192.168.3.147 |
| Type-Model: | 9405-520 |
| Serial: | 10E80CC |
| State: | 000F Server firmware ready |
| Reference code: | |
| Connection status | |
| | |
| 60.01 (of 100) Req | uesting console access |
| | |

Figure 4-14 Thin Console connection status 60.nn

10. When the connection to the server is completed, the Thin Console 5250 session behaves like any other 5250 console (Figure 4-15).

| Dedicated Service Tools (DST) Sign On | System: | S10E80CC |
|--|---------|----------|
| ATTENTION: This device can become the console. | | |
| Type choices, press Enter. | | |
| Service tools user | | |
| Service tools password | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Figure 4-15 DST Sign On screen

11. When you power down the system (or IPL), the FSP port remains powered on. Because the Thin Console is directly connected to the FSP, it is able to detect that connection, even when the i5/OS system is not running. In such a situation, the system attention light is on. It will go off as soon as the server powers on. The following figures (Figure 4-16 to Figure Figure 4-26 on page 109) show the codes displayed by the Thin Console to signal this. Note the Server Information State, Server Information Reference Code, and Connection status fields.

Figure 4-16 shows power off 10.00.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: FFFF Server state is unknown

Reference code:

Connection status

10.00 (of 100) Searching for server at Ethernet port HMC1 or HMC2
```

Figure 4-16 Power off 10.00

Figure 4-17 shows power off 20.00.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 0000 Server powered off

Reference code:

Connection status

20.00 (of 100) Server found
```

Figure 4-17 Power off 20.00

Figure 4-18 through Figure 4-21 on page 107 show four stages of power off 30.00.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 0000 Server powered off

Reference code:

Connection status

30.00 (of 100) Waiting for server to power on
```

Figure 4-18 Power off 30.00 1 of 4

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 0000 Server powered off

Reference code: C1112000

Connection status

30.00 (of 100) Waiting for server to power on
```

Figure 4-19 Power off 30.00 2 of 4

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 0005 Server powering on

Reference code: C100C1FF

Connection status

30.00 (of 100) Waiting for server to power on
```

Figure 4-20 Power off 30.00 3 of 4

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 0001 Server powering on

Reference code: C700406E

Connection status

30.00 (of 100) Waiting for server to power on
```

Figure 4-21 Power on 30.00 4 of 4

Figure 4-22 shows power on 40.01.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 000F Server firmware ready

Reference code:

Connection status

40.01 (of 100) Server firmware is ready to communicate
```

Figure 4-22 Power on 40.01

Figure 4-23 shows power on 50.00.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 000F Server firmware ready

Reference code: C2003150

Connection status

50.00 (of 100) Searching for operating system
```

Figure 4-23 Power on 50.00

Figure 4-24 shows power on 60.01.

```
Server Information

IP: 192.168.3.147

Type-Model: 9405-520

Serial: 10E80CC

State: 000F Server firmware ready

Reference code: C6004027

Connection status

60.01 (of 100) Requesting console access
```

Figure 4-24 Power on 60.01

Figure 4-25 shows that power on is ready.

| IPL or Install the System |
|--|
| System: S10E80CC |
| Select one of the following: |
| 1. Perform an IPL |
| 2. Install the operating system |
| 3. Use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) |
| 4. Perform automatic installation of the operating system |
| 5. Save Licensed Internal Code |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| Selection |
| |
| - |
| Licensed Internal Code - Property of IBM 5722-999 Licensed |
| Internal Code (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1980, 2006. All |
| rights reserved. US Government Users Restricted Rights - |
| Use duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP schedule |
| Contract with IBM Corp. |

Figure 4-25 Power on ready

Figure 4-26 shows the power on IPL steps.

| Licensed Internal Code 1 | IPL in Progress | 08/18/06 14:11:57 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| IPL: | | |
| Туре: | Unattended | |
| Start date and time | 08/18/06 14:1 | 1:24 |
| Previous system end | Abnormal | |
| Current step / total : | 16 16 | |
| Reference code detail : | C6004065 | |
| | | |
| IPL step | Time Elapsed | Time Remaining |
| Commit Recovery | 00:00:01 | 00:00:00 |
| Data Base Initialization | 00:00:01 | 00:00:00 |
| Journal IPL Clean up | 00:00:01 | 00:00:00 |
| Commit Initialization | 00:00:01 | 00:00:00 |
| >Start the operating system | | |
| | | |
| Item: | | |
| Current / Total : | | |
| | | |
| Sub Item: | | |
| Identifier | | |
| Current / Total : | | |
| | | |

Figure 4-26 Power on IPL steps

4.2.6 Customization settings

From the 5250 session, select Ctrl+Alt+End to go to the ezConnect - Neoware Connection Manager window (Figure 4-27). This GUI enables you to change some of the settings of your Thin Console. This section describes the menu options.



Figure 4-27 Neoware Connection Manager

Connection menu

Figure 4-28 shows the options that are available from the Connection menu. The Session option enables you to restart the 5250 console connection. If you change any of the connection settings, you have to restart the connection for the changes to take effect.

| ezConnect - I | Neoware C | onnecti | on Mana | ger | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|------|--------|
| <u>Connection</u> | <u>S</u> ettings | <u>H</u> elp | | | | | | |
| <u>C</u> onnect | | | | | | A | | |
| End | | | V | W | W | | | |
| Add | | | Add | Edit | Delete | Сору | | |
| Edit | Name | | | | | | Туре | Status |
| <u>D</u> elete | le | | | | | | IBM | active |
| Сору | | | | | | | | |
| <u>S</u> ession | Close Restar | All Con t | nections | | | | | |
| | <u></u> cordi | • | | | | | | |

Figure 4-28 Neoware Connection Manager: Connection menu

Settings menu: Appliance properties

The Appliance properties option (Figure 4-29 on page 111) from the Settings menu enables you to customize some of the Thin Console properties. The options from Network to Desktop

(within a red frame in Figure 4-29) are the general settings. Click **Network** if you want to modify the network settings.

| ezConnect - | Neoware Connection Manaç | jer | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|----|---|------|--------|
| <u>C</u> onnection | <u>S</u> ettings <u>H</u> elp | | | | | | |
| | <u>A</u> ppliance properties | ۱I | <u>N</u> etwork | F2 | | | |
| • • | <u>C</u> onnection properties | F | <u>S</u> ecurity | | | | |
| Connect | End Add | | Printers | | | | |
| Connection Name | | | — Sound | | | Туре | Status |
| 🔳 5250 Console | | | Time & Date | | | IBM | active |
| | | | <u>I</u> nne & Date | | | | |
| | | 1 | <u>D</u> esktop | | - | | |
| | | | <u>M</u> essages | | | | |
| | | | <u>C</u> onsole | | | | |
| | | | <u>F</u> actory Reset | | | | |
| | | .7 | | _ | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

Figure 4-29 Neoware Connection Manager: General settings

Figure 4-30 shows the Network Settings window.

| 📮 Network Settings | | | × |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| Network Devices DNS | ezUpdate A | dvanced | |
| Network Device: | | Built-in Ethernet (default) | |
| Device Configuration - Enable Device | To viek current : | status, press F3 ——— | |
| Configure Using: | | Static | |
| IP Address: | | 192.168.3.1 | |
| Network Mask: | | 255.255.255.0 | |
| Broadcast Address: | | 192.168.3.255 | |
| Gateway: | | 192.168.3.1 | |
| | | | |
| Ethernet Settings | | | |
| Link Speed: | | Auto Sense | - |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | <u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel | |

Figure 4-30 Neoware Connection Manager: Network settings

The three other options in the red frame in the Appliance properties (Figure 4-31) are advanced settings. Factory Reset resets the customization to the factory default, and the Console option opens the Appliance Console.

| ezConnect - | Neoware Connection Manage | er | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|----|-----|----|--------|
| <u>C</u> onnection | <u>S</u> ettings <u>H</u> elp | | | | | |
| | Appliance properties | <u>N</u> etwork | F2 | | | |
| v ' | <u>C</u> onnection properties | <u>S</u> ecurity | | | | |
| Connect | End Add | Printers | | | | |
| Connecti | ion Name | - S <u>o</u> und | | Ту | pe | Status |
| 🔳 5250 Cor | nsole | Time & Date | | IBN | 1 | active |
| | | <u>D</u> esktop | | | | |
| | | <u>M</u> essages | | | | |
| | | <u>C</u> onsole | | | | |
| | | <u>F</u> actory Reset | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Figure 4-31 Neoware Connection Manager: Advanced settings

In the Appliance Console screen (Figure 4-32), type menu and press Enter.

| Appliance Console bash\$ menu | | |
|---|--|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| <u>M</u> | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Figure 4-32 Appliance Console

This opens an advanced configuration menu (Figure 4-33). The options in this menu exist to enable problem determination by IBM support personnel. Option 10 overrides the FSP address and stops the automatic network search code.

Important: It is recommended that you do not make any changes here.



Figure 4-33 Appliance Console: Menu screen

Settings menu: Connection properties

To change the terminal settings, select **Settings** \rightarrow **Connection properties** \rightarrow **Global IBM Terminal Settings** (Figure 4-34).



Figure 4-34 Neoware Connection Manager: Global IBM Terminal Settings

An example of customization is the color mapping for the 5250 session. Perform the following tasks to customize color mapping:

1. From the 5250 Settings tab, select **Advanced** against Custom Colors and select the check box against **Option Menu**, as shown in Figure 4-35.

| Global IBM Terminal Settings | |
|---|--|
| 3270 Settings 5250 Settings Locale | |
| Key Mapping: Enabled Keypad Capability: Ves Record/Playback: Hidden Custom Colors: Advanced Appearance I 132 Columns Column Separators Desktop file: Ves | Allow use of Command menu: Hidden Print menu: Hidden Font menu: No, no resize/move Edit Menu Control Menu Misc Prefs Help Menu New Session IP Window |
| Emulator User ID: Emulator Password: | |
| Other Parameters: | <u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel |

Figure 4-35 Neoware Connection Manager: 5250 Settings tab

2. Restart the 5250 console session for the changes to take effect. After the restart, the Option menu (Figure 4-36) is available in the 5250 session.

| Option | | 1 | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|---------|-------|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| Keypad | Dedicated | Service | Tools | (DST) | Sign On | | |
| Customize Keypad | | | | | | System: | S10E80CC |
| Color Mapping | Enter. | | | | | | |
| Keyboard Remapping | | | | | | | |
| Service tools pass | sword | | | - | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| F3=Exit F5=Change | password | F12=Car | ncel | | | | |

Figure 4-36 5250 Session color mapping

 Click Advanced. Select a construct from the left column and change it to the color of your preference. Click Apply Current Color. When you are finished, click Save to save your changes to a new, user-defined color scheme (Figure 4-37).



Figure 4-37 5250 session color mapping function

4. Click **Basic**, select the new color scheme you just created and click **Save**, as shown in Figure 4-38.

| ⊒ IBM - 5250 Console : A 🛛 Color Mapping | | | × |
|---|----------------|------------|----------------|
| Select the color mapping function: Basic Advanced | Γ. | | |
| Choose a color scheme: User: NewColours IBM: Black background IBM: Dark grey background IBM: Light grey background IBM: Light background IBM: Light blue background | | | |
| | | Men | u Bar |
| • | Assist Program | Blue text | Turquoise text |
| r, | | Green text | White text |
| | Entry Area | Pink text | Yellow text |
| | Button | Red text | Push Button |
| 1 | | Statu | ls Line |
| Save Delete Apply Changes To Choose Apply to have colors take e | o Session Exit | | Help |

Figure 4-38 5250 session: Save color scheme

5. Save the color scheme as the default for all your sessions, as shown in Figure 4-39.

| | IBM - 5250 Console : A Color Mapping | × |
|---|--|---|
| | Select the color mapping function: | |
| | Basic Advanced | |
| | Choose a color scheme: User: NewColours IBM: Black background IBM: Light grey background IBM: Light blue background IBM: Light blue background Choose a save option: | |
| | A Same as a default for all your esseries | |
| | Save as a default for all your sessions | |
| | Menu Bar | |
| | Save Cancel stext Turquoise text | t |
| | Entry Area Pink text Yellow text | |
| | Button Button Status Line | - |
| - | | |
| | Save Delete Apply Changes To Session Exit | P |
| | Choose Apply to have colors take effect in session. | |

Figure 4-39 5250 session: Save option

 When you exit the window, you will be asked whether to apply the changes you just made to the current session. Select **Apply changes to this session before exiting** and click **Exit** (Figure 4-40).

| 📮 IBM - 5250 Console : A Color Mapping | × |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Select the color mapping function: Basic Advanced | |
| Choose a color scheme: User: NewColours IBM: Black background IBM: Dark grey background IBM: Light g IBM: Light b IBM: Light b Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator have been modified and saved but not applied. Colors in the emulator | |
| Exit Cancel ruoise ite Button Red text Push Bu Status Line | ; text text text tton |
| Save Delete Apply Changes To Session Exit Colors saved to file: Default.default | Help |

Figure 4-40 5250 session: Apply changes

7. At this point, you still have the Option menu in the top left corner of the 5250 session. Switch back to the Neoware Connection Manager to take the Option menu out of the 5250 session (Figure 4-41).

| Global IBM Terminal Settings | |
|---|--|
| 3270 Settings 5250 Settings Locale | |
| Key Mapping: Enabled Keypad Capability: Yes Record/Playback: Hidden Custom Colors: Advanced Appearance I 132 Columns Column Separators Desider file Yes | Allow use of Command menu: Hidden Print menu: Hidden Font menu: No, no resize/move Edit Menu Control Menu Option Menu Misc Prefs Help Menu |
| Emulator User ID: | |
| Emulator Password: Other Parameters: | |
| | <u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel |
| | |

Figure 4-41 5250 settings

4.2.7 Maintenance

Hardware warranty replacements are made by Neoware. Customers must register at the following Neoware Web site for warranty entitlement:

http://www.neoware.com/support/warranty.php

The software service is delivered by Neoware. Currently, no known fixes are required for the Thin Console. Neoware provides fixes to its registered customers. Load that code to a USB memory key. The minimum capacity requirement for the memory key is 100 MB. The flash code contains the complete NeoLinux image, and not just a fix or update. Refer to the following Web site for more details:

http://www.neoware.com/

Perform these tasks to update (flash the code of) the Thin Console:

- 1. Receive the code from Neoware.
- 2. Expand the compressed file contents into the root directory of your USB key. If your USB key is shown as "E:" drive, E:\image.dd must be on the drive after the copy is complete. If you have already made a bootable USB key for Thin Console updates, you only require a new image.dd file. The file you receive might have a different format, such as image-142.dd. In such a situation, change the name to image.dd.
- 3. Find the batch file that corresponds to your mounted USB key drive letter. In this example, the USB key is located in E:. Double-click the corresponding batch file:
 - If your drive is mounted on E:, double-click E:\syslinux32\syslinux-e-drive.bat.
 - If your drive is mounted on F:, double click F:\syslinux32\syslinux-f-drive.bat.

- If you have another drive letter, either create a corresponding bat file using Notepad or contact Development.
- 4. Your USB key must now be a bootable installer.
- 5. Power down the Thin Console by holding down the Power button for five seconds.
- 6. Insert the USB key into your Neoware Thin Console.
- 7. Power on the Thin Console and press the Delete key after you hear the Thin Console beep to enter the BIOS setup utility.
- 8. In the Phoenix AwardBIOS CMOS Setup Utility screen (Figure 4-42), select Advanced BIOS Features.



Figure 4-42 Phoenix - AwardBIOS CMOS Setup Utility

| Phoenix - AwardBlOS CMOS Setup Advanced BlOS Features | Utility |
|---|--|
| First Boot Device(USB-HDD)Second Boot Device(USB-21P)Boot Up NunLock Status[On]Typenatic Rate Setting[Disabled]Typenatic Bate (Chars Sec) 6Typenatic Delay (Meec)250Security Option[Setup]Video BIOS Shadow[Enabled]Full Screen LOGO Show[Enabled]Sunnary Screen Show[Disabled] | Iten Help Menu Level Select Your Boot Device Priority |
| L++:Move Enter:Select +/-/PU/PD:Value F10:Save F5:Previous Values F7: Opt | ESC:Exit F1:General Help |

9. This takes you to the Advanced BIOS Features window (Figure 4-43).

Figure 4-43 Advanced BIOS Features screen

10. In the Advanced BIOS Features screen (Figure 4-44), ensure the following:

- The First Boot Device is set to USB-HDD
- The Second Boot Device is set to HDD-0

Press F10 to save your BIOS changes, and press Enter to confirm SAVE to CMOS and EXIT.



Figure 4-44 Boot devices

11. The Neoware Thin Console recognizes the memory key and boots from it. You will receive the following message:

The image on the console is about to be overwritten. Do you wish to proceed with the update? [yes/no]

12. Reply yes to the message and press Enter. Follow the instructions when the following message is displayed on the screen:

Please remove the USB key and press Enter...

13. In the next screen (Figure 4-45), select a keyboard language.

| a 100 Prost & ab | 15 German/Austrian |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. US English | AC Common Australian - appFump |
| 2. UK English | 10. Germanymustrian - presaro |
| 3. UK English - preEuro | 17. Swiss German |
| 4. Danish | 10. Italian |
| 5. Danish - preEuro | 19. Italian - preEuro |
| 6. Dutch | 20. Norwegian |
| 7. Dutch - preEuro | 21. Portuguese |
| 8. Finnish | 22. Portuguese - preEuro |
| 9. Finnish - preEuro | 23. Spanish |
| 10. French | 24. Spanish - preEuro |
| 11. Canadian French | 25. LA Spanish |
| 12. Belgium/French | 26. Swedish |
| 13. Belgiun/French - preEuro | 27. Suedish - preEuro |
| 14. Swiss French | |
| | |
| Select a keyboard language: | |
| | |

Figure 4-45 Keyboard language

14. When the connection status screen is displayed, the update is complete.

4.2.8 Backup/recovery and availability considerations

No backup tools are provided with the Thin Console. The Linux image is a stable environment, but if you ever find yourself in a situation where you have to recover a corrupted image, the procedure is to flash the Thin Console with the image that is available for download from the Web. Refer to 4.2.7, "Maintenance" on page 119 for more details.

Reloading the image implies a reset to factory settings, meaning that your customizations are lost. However, because the user-definable settings in the Thin Console are minimal, they can be easily re-entered in the event of a Linux image reload.

As with any other 5250 console type, an unplanned outage of the Thin Console hardware must not prevent the attached server from continuing to run. However, it will restrict access to some functionality on the system, such as the DST.

4.2.9 Troubleshooting

This section discusses solutions for some common problems.

Hardware problems

Table 4-3 lists some common hardware problems that might occur when using the Thin Console. You can also refer to the documentation that comes with your console device or refer to the following Web site:

http://www.neoware.com/

| Symptom | Problem and recovery task |
|---|--|
| The display of the Thin Console is completely blank. | There might be a hardware problem with the Thin Console or monitor, or there might be a setup problem. Follow these steps to resolve the problem: Verify that the cabling is secure and accurate. Verify that the Thin Console and monitor are powered on. Reset the default monitor resolution setting. Refer to the console documentation or visit http://www.neoware.com/ |
| The keyboard is not working correctly. | This might be a hardware problem or it might be that the keyboard is set to a location that does not match the current keyboard setting. Refer to the console documentation or visit http://www.neoware.com/ |
| You cannot view wide displays such as spool files using the 5250 console. | Set the resolution of the Thin Console to 1024 x 768. |

Table 4-3Troubleshooting: hardware problems

Connection status codes

Table 4-4 shows connection status code problems that might arise when using the Thin Console.

| Table 4-4 | Troubleshooting: | using | status | codes |
|-----------|------------------|-------|--------|-------|
|-----------|------------------|-------|--------|-------|

| | Symptom | Problem and recovery task |
|--|--|---|
| | The status screen does not get past status code 00.xx | The Thin Console is not able to find an active service processor. To resolve the problem: 1. Verify that the Ethernet cable is plugged into either the HMC1 or HMC2 port at the back of the server. 2. Verify that the Ethernet ports on both the server and the Thin Console are showing link-active and activity lights. 3. Verify that the HMC port on the server is configured with either the 192.168.3.147 or the 192.168.2.147 IP address (manufacturing defaults). If the port is not configured using one these IP addresses, reset the factory settings. From the ezConnect - Neoware Connection Manager window, select Settings → Appliance properties → Factory Reset. 4. Verify that the Service processor is powered on by noting whether the control panel display is active. 5. Restart the Thin Console to see whether the problem is reproducible. 6. Isolate faulty hardware problems by using the other HMC port at the back of the server, using another Ethernet cable, or by using another Thin Console. |
| | The status screen displays status code 10.xx, and then prompts you for the HMC access password. After entering the password, the user ID and password cannot be authenticated. | Complete these tasks to resolve the problem: Verify that the keyboard is set to a location that matches the current keyboard setting. Verify that the Caps Lock, Num Lock, and Scroll Lock keys are off. Change the HMC access password to a new value by logging into ASMI as the administrator. Refer to the topic on Changing ASMI passwords in the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center. Use a password with only uppercase English alphabetic characters. If this resolves the problem, contact IBM support. |
| | The status screen does not get past status code 10.xx or 20.xx. | Complete these tasks to resolve the problem: Verify that another Thin Console or an HMC is not connected alongside this Thin Console. Restart the Thin Console to see if the problem is reproducible. |
| | The status screen does not get past status code 30.xx. | The Thin Console displays status code 30.xx until the server is powered on and PHYP standby is reached. If the Thin Console remains in state 30.xx, power on the server. If the state is 0x0F and the status does not display system status after you see 30.xx, contact IBM support. |
| | The status screen does not get past status code 40.xx. | Verify that another Thin Console or an HMC is not connected alongside this Thin Console. If so, disconnect the other console device. |

| Symptom | Problem and recovery task |
|--|---|
| The status screen does not get past status code 50.xx. | Remaining in this state means that the Thin Console has completed the initialization of the firmware communication and has not successfully started communication with the LIC in i5/OS. |

You can find this information in the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/index.jsp?topic=/iphc1/iphc ltroubleshooting.htm

4.3 Console card locations

Starting from V5R3, only the currently configured console type is supported. So if you are planning a migration or upgrade that includes a console-type change, predefine the new console type. Refer to 2.2.5, "Model 840 to model 570 (system upgrade with no LPAR or Hardware Management Console)" on page 45 for instructions.

In a partitioned environment, if no console type is specified, it scans the tagged IOP specified during the creation of the partition. If more than one console type is connected to this IOP, the first console device to connect becomes the console, thus making it difficult to predict which card will be chosen for each IPL.

Tagging the same IOP for both the primary console and the alternate console might result in the inability to select a console.

On systems where more than one console card location is available, you should not have two of the same card types occupy those locations per console mode. For example, if the console mode was set to 3 (for LAN), ensure that a LAN card is *not* installed in both the primary location and the alternate location.

4.3.1 Designated slots for models 5xx (V5R3)

Table 4-5 lists the designated slots for models 5xx (not 520+), in the order of priority.

| Model | Console slots for LAN and workstation IOAs (such as twinax) ^a | Async/ECS slot |
|-------|--|--|
| 520 | C5 C2 | C3 |
| 550 | C4 If an IXS card takes this slot, LAN and twinax will not be available. | C2 If an IXS card is installed, it causes this location to go to C5 to make room for an IOP. |
| 570 | C4 C6 In the case of multiple CECs, these are in the same CEC as the load source. | C2 |
| 595 | C04 (on #9194 Base PCI-X I/O enclosure) | C02 (#9194 Base PCI-X I/O enclosure) |

 Table 4-5
 Designated slots for models 5xx (V5R3)

a. Twinax adapters are typically placed in one of the Operations Console LAN slots but can replace the async card too.

4.3.2 i5/OS V5R3M5 and V5R4 (new Smart IOA plus+ models)

LAN console: Embedded LAN ports

In the new smart IOA (IOP-less) models, feature codes #5706 (PCI-X Gbps Ethernet-TX IOA) and #5707 (PCI-X 1 Gbps Ethernet-SX IOA) are the only console-supported smart IOAs.

The embedded port is the manufacturing default for the LAN console. Card locations are supported only when the embedded port is disabled.

Table 4-6 shows the location of the embedded LAN ports on models 520+, 550+, and 570+.

| System | Location code of embedded LAN port |
|--------|---|
| 520 | U787A.001.sssssss-P1-T5 |
| 550 | U787B.001.sssssss-P1-T9 |
| 570 | U7879.001.sssssss-P1-T6 In case of multiple CECs, the CEC with the load source |

Table 4-6 5xx+ embedded LAN port location code

Designated slots 520+

Table 4-7 lists the designated slots for models 520+.

| Table 4-7 | Designated slots for models 520+ | |
|-----------|----------------------------------|--|
|-----------|----------------------------------|--|

| | HMC or IOP-less LAN without an IXS | HMC or IOP-less LAN with an IXS | Direct cable/twinax or IOP-driven LAN without an IXS | Direct cable/twinax or IOP-driven LAN with an IXS |
|----|---|------------------------------------|--|---|
| C1 | IOP or IOP-less IOA | IOP or IOP-less IOA | IOP | IOP |
| C2 | IOP-less IOA or IOP-driven IOA if C1 is IOP | ECS-PTF IOA LAN (if #5706/5707) | IOP-less IOA or IOP-driven IOA if C1 is IOP 2nd location for LAN or twinax | ECS, LAN, or twinax |
| СЗ | ECS-PTF | Feature IOP | Direct cable (IOP must be in C6) or IOP | Feature IOP |
| C4 | IOP-less IOA | IOPless IOA | IOP-less IOA | IOPless IOA |
| C5 | LAN (if #5706/5707) | IXS card | Twinax or LAN console (IOP must be in C3 or C6) | IXS card |
| C6 | IOP-less IOA or feature IOP | IXS card overhang | IOP or IOP-less IOA | IXS card overhang |

4.4 Changing the console type

Refer to the IBM Systems Hardware Information Center for instructions about how to switch between console types on a running system:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/topic/iphca/iphcabook.pdf

4.4.1 Using the console service functions (65+21)

When you migrate to another system without predefining the console type, the system might not detect the new console type. The system reference code to signal this event is A600500x.

In this event, you can force the system to switch between the different console types until it finds the type that is connected. The way you to do this is to use the console service functions (65+21). These functions can be used on a HMC system or a non-HMC system.

It is recommended that you only use this function if you do not have another workstation available to recover from the error. A prerequisite to starting the procedure is to make sure that all hardware is configured correctly for the console type you want to connect (in the case of a partitioned system with HMC, make sure that you tagged the right IOP), and that the console device is working properly and is connected as required.

Another prerequisite is that the server has advanced far enough through the IPL for the console service functions to be available. If your system is not in manual mode, and the extended functions are not activated, or both, perform these steps:

- 1. Place the server in manual mode.
- 2. Select console function 25 and press Enter.
- 3. Select console function 26 and press Enter.

The console service functions (65+21) must be performed from the control panel or through the control panel function on the HMC or the Operations Console control panel GUI:

- 1. From the control panel (or the control panel function on the HMC or the Operations Console), enter the function 65.
- 2. Within 45 seconds, enter function 21. Otherwise, the system will not tie both the functions together and consider the function 21 as a regular force DST to console. If function 65 and function 21 are entered in less than 45 seconds, you must see SRC A6*nn*500A, where *nn* represents the current console type (you might have to enter function 11 to display the SRC):
 - 00: No console defined
 - 01: Twinax console
 - 02: Direct-attached Operations Console
 - 03: LAN Operations Console
- Enter function 65, followed by function 21 again to enter the edit mode. The operator panel displays SRC of A6nn500B to confirm the edit mode. You might have to enter function 11 to display the SRC. To cancel any changes and exit the edit mode, use function 66.
- 4. Repeat the functions 65+21(+11) until you reach the console type you require. (If you exceed 45 seconds between 65 and 21 when in the edit mode, SRC A6*nn*500D is presented, indicating a timeout condition. The system is no longer in edit mode.)
- 5. When you have reached the correct console type, enter only function 21(+11) to confirm your choice. SRC A6*nn*500C is displayed to indicate that the change is accepted.
- 6. Enter function 21 once more to force DST to the console.

An example of a console change would be changing from twinax (console type 01) to LAN console (type 03):

- ▶ $65+21+11 \rightarrow A601500A \rightarrow You$ are in display mode and the console mode is 01.
- ► $65+21+11 \rightarrow A602500B \rightarrow You$ entered edit mode and incremented the counter.
- ▶ $65+21+11 \rightarrow A603500B \rightarrow You$ incremented the counter again.
- ▶ $21+11 \rightarrow A603500C \rightarrow You$ invoked the action (set the console mode to 03).

i5/OS V5R4 software

This chapter describes how to identify IBM software-licensed programs that may impact an iSeries migration to a new IBM System i5 and System i5+ hardware. It also identifies the supported upgrade paths and interoperability with existing systems.

5.1 i5/OS V5R4 software requirements and information

This section deals with some of the i5/OS V5R4-specific considerations for upgrades to the new model 5xx hardware:

- i5/OS V5R4 requires a minimum of 128 MB of main storage in each partition, with 256 MB in the primary partition. Additional main storage higher than these values might be required for acceptable system performance.
- ► i5/OS V5R4 requires that the load source disk in each OS/400 partition is 17 GB or larger.
- i5/OS V5R4 Licensed Internal Code (LIC) requires more storage space than the earlier releases. All of the partitions with V5R3M0 or earlier installed require additional storage space that is reserved before the installation.

Important: Failure to reserve additional space results in the upgrade stopping during the installation of the LIC.

Before upgrading to i5/OS V5R4, some program temporary fixes (PTFs) must be installed in the current release. This enables additional options in the Prepare for Upgrade menu.

Important: These PTFs are shipped with the OS/400 release. If these PTFs are not installed and the software agreements are not accepted, the installation fails.

- ► Server firmware must be at release SF235_160 or later.
- Check whether the Hardware Management Console (HMC) code level is compatible with the server firmware.

5.1.1 i5/OS V5R4 informational authorized program analysis report and PSPs

For additional information about new 5xx hardware and the required software, refer to the PSPs and the informational authorized program analysis reports (APARs):

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/iseries/v5r4/topic/rzaq9/rzaq9.pdf

For additional information about the new functions and the functions that have been removed in i5/OS V5R4, refer to *iSeries Memorandum to Users Release R540*, which is available on the Web at:

http://www-912.ibm.com/s_dir/sline003.nsf/2d3aff1c6b4d6ce086256453000d971e/bdb2077 acff30ff28625710f005ca12f

APAR and PSP information can be found by using the following identifiers:

- SF98010 refers to installation information for i5/OS V5R4.
- SF99540 refers to information about problems discovered since the latest PTF cumulative package.
- MF99540 refers to information about installing V5R3 hardware.
- SF99168 refers to information about server upgrades and data migrations.
5.1.2 Required software

i5/OS V5R4 or V5R3M5 is a prerequisite on all partitions for the new System i5+ hardware. Install the latest cumulative PFT package, HIPER PTFs, and any hardware-specific PTFs for your installation on all of the partitions.

Enter the command SNDPTFORD PTFID(SF99540) DLVY(*ANY) to order the latest cumulative PTF package. This package must have the latest group HIPER PTFs and database PTFs delivered with it.

5.1.3 AS/400 models not supported in i5/OS V5R4

Older AS/400 models are not supported in i5/OS V5R4:

- ► AS/400 models 4xx and 5xx are only supported up to OS/400 V5R1.
- ► AS/400 models 150, 6xx, Sxx, and SB1 are only supported up to OS/400 V5R2.
- iSeries models 170 and 7xx are only supported up to i5/OS V5R3.

Tip: Clients with these models must perform data migration to new 5xx models rather than following the upgrade path.

It is preferable for clients to upgrade to the latest supported level on the hardware for interoperability. If this is not possible (due to hardware, insufficient memory, or time constraints, for example), data migration can be performed from the current release.

i5/OS V5R4 is the last release that will support models 270, 820, 830, 840 SB2, and SB3.

5.1.4 License agreements

In i5/OS V5R3, V5R3M5, and V5R4, software license agreements must be accepted before certain products can be installed. It is essential that you agree to the LIC and OS/400 software agreements; otherwise, the installation fails.

Agreeing to licenses before installing the licensed programs

Perform the following tasks:

- 1. Ensure that the software agreement PTFs have been applied.
- 2. Ensure that a custom installation list is created.
- 3. Run the GO LICPGM command.
- 4. Select option 5 (Prepare for install).
- 5. Select the Work with Software agreements option.
- 6. Select all of the agreements that you want to accept and press Enter.
- 7. Press F14 to accept each agreement.

5.2 i5/OS V5R4 software upgrade paths

Some releases of OS/400 may not be upgraded directly to i5/OS V5R4:

- Direct upgrade to i5/OS V5R4 can be performed only from releases OS/400 V5R2, i5/OS V5R3M0, and V5R3M5.
- Systems at releases prior to OS/400 V5R2 must perform a two-step upgrade, first upgrading to release OS/400 V5R2 or i5/OS V5R3, and then upgrading to i5/OS V5R4.

Important: All V5 releases (V5R1, V5R2, and V5R3) require a *minimum* of 128 MB of main storage in each partition (V5R3 requires a *minimum* of 256 MB in the primary partition). Additional storage above these minimums might be required for reasonable system performance.

When upgrading across more than one release, refer to iSeries Memorandum to Users Release R540 and the PSP information for each of the skipped releases to see how your installation might be affected.

5.3 Interoperability with the existing systems

The movement of data between systems or partitions at different operating system levels is sometimes required. The support for this is called interoperability, which also allows for applications to be compiled at either release and allows transparent communication between systems. It supports centralized management facilities and allows support for PCs running at various levels of client access. i5/OS V5R4 has interoperability with OS/400 V5R2 and later.

5.4 i5/OS V5R4 software upgrade

This section outlines the i5/OS V5R4 software upgrade process. Ensure that care is taken because there are differences from the previous release upgrades.

Important: This section is only an outline. It is assumed that automatic installation from CD is performed. For details about the installation process or alternative methods, refer to *i5/OS and Related Software - Install, Upgrade, or Delete. Version 5 Release 4*, SC41-5120, at http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/iseries/v5r4/topic/rzahc/rzahc.pdf

Pre-upgrade planning

The following tasks are involved in pre-upgrade planning:

- 1. Check whether your server meets the requirements to support the new release.
- 2. Confirm the delivery of all the required software components and license keys.
- Order the most recent Cumulative PTF package and Group PTF package that are relevant to your environment.
- 4. View the PSP for the current release and the target release.
- 5. Identify required software fixes (software acceptance PTFs and others identified by the PSP).
- 6. If you have nonconfigured disks, a PTF that enables you to set the disk configuration option exists.
- 7. Print a list of all the system values.
- 8. Gather performance data.
- 9. Ensure that the server has sufficient disk storage space.
- 10. Ensure that the load source disk is 17 GB or larger on each partition.
- 11. Ensure that IBM-supplied product libraries are not in a user ASP.
- 12. Ensure that there are no user-created subdirectories in the /QIBM/ProdData/CA400/Express path or the /QIBM/ProdData/ path.

13. Delete the PTF cover letters in QGPL/QAPZCOVER.

Preparing the server in the current release

The following tasks are involved in preparing the server in the current release:

- 1. Load and install the PTFs identified earlier.
- 2. Permanently apply all of the PTFs.
- Change the system values QSYSLIBL and QUSRLIBL to remove any licensed program libraries or secondary language libraries. Do not remove libraries QSYS, QGPL, QUSRSYS, QTEMP, or QSYS2.
- 4. Change the system value QALWOBJRST to *ALL.
- 5. Change the system value QVFYOBJRST to 3.
- 6. Set the time zone data area.
- 7. Verify the system objects.
- 8. Ensure two-phase commit integrity.
- If there are a lot of spool files on the system, set the compress job tables IPL attribute to none. To view, enter:

DSPIPLA CPRJOBATR

To change, enter:

CHGIPLA CPRJOBATR(*NONE)

10. Enter the following command and select option 5:

GO LICPGM

- 11.Create a customized list of software to install with the option.
- 12. Check for items not found on the media.
- 13.Add any additional programs to the list.
- 14. Delete any unsupported products.
- 15.Delete any products or product options that are no longer required.

16. Accept the software agreements.

- 17. Clean up the disk storage space and remove unwanted products and data.
- 18. Allocate additional space for LIC.

Important: The additional space is reserved during the next IPL. This IPL must occur prior to upgrading (a required step for each partition).

- 19. If you have nonconfigured disks, set the Keep disk configuration option to *YES.
- 20. Set the console mode in the DST.
- 21. If you are upgrading IBM Cryptographic Access Provider 128-bit, and currently have 40-bit or 56-bit versions installed, remove them.
- 22. Vary off Integrated xSeries servers and other application servers such as Lotus Domino servers.
- 23. Check whether the installation device you want to use is available to this partition and is a suitable alternative IPL device.

Performing a full system save

To perform a full system save, type the following command:

GO SAVE

Select option 21.

Important: After you begin to upgrade the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) to the next release, the process must complete. If it is not possible to complete the upgrade, you will have to recover your system by scratch installing from this backup.

During the installation process and subsequent PTF installation, the system may have to IPL several times. You can prevent the system from running your autostart jobs by changing the system value QSTRUPPGM to *NONE.

Performing an automatic upgrade

The steps involved in performing an automatic upgrade are:

- 1. Insert the System LIC CD into the CD drive.
- 2. Set the control panel mode to Normal.
- Power down the server or partition by entering the following command: PWRDWNSYS OPTION(*IMMED) RESTART(*YES) IPLSRC(D)
- 4. Load the next volumes when prompted.

Verifying the success of an automatic installation

Perform the following tasks to verify the success of an automatic installation:

- 1. When the sign in display is shown, sign in as QSECOFR.
- 2. Enter the command GO LICPGM, select option 50, and press Enter.
- 3. It the Display Install History screen, press Enter.
- 4. Check the displayed log for errors.
- 5. Refer to Chapter 10, "Troubleshooting software installation problems" in *System i i5/OS* and related software: Installing, upgrading, or deleting *i5/OS* and related software, Version *5 Release 4*, SC41-5120, which is available on the Web at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/iseries/v5r4/topic/rzahc/rzahc.pdf

Installing additional programs, if required

To install additional programs, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Enter the GO LICPGM command and select option **11** (Install licensed programs).
- 2. Select the required options.

Tip: If the required option or program is not in the list, go to the blank line at the top of the list and add the program identifier.

3. Insert CDs as required.

Installing secondary languages, if required

To install the secondary languages, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Enter the command GO LICPGM and select option 21 (Install secondary languages).
- 2. Place the CD in the drive.

3. Select the language you require.

Installing PTFs

To install PTFs, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Insert the first Cumulative Package CD.
- 2. Enter the command GO PTF and select option 8.
- 3. Insert the other CDs when prompted.
- 4. IPL PWRDWNSYS OPTION(*IMMED) RESTART(*YES) IPLSRC(B)I.
- 5. Wait for the INZSYS to complete.
- 6. Install the HIPER, DATABSE, and PTF groups that are relevant to your installation.
- 7. IPL PWRDWNSYS OPTION(*IMMED) RESTART(*YES) IPLSRC(B).
- 8. Verify the correct installation of the PTFs by running the GO LICPGM command and selecting option **50**.

Preparing the system for normal use

Follow these steps to prepare the system for normal use:

- 1. Change the system values back to their original settings (with the help of the printout you took earlier); in particular, reset QSYSLIBL, QUSRLIBL, QVFYOBJRST, QALWOBJRST, and QSTRUPPGM.
- 2. Set CHGIPLA CPRJOBATR back to its previous value.
- 3. Perform a test.
- 4. Return the system to the users.



6

Tape data encryption in i5/OS V5R4

This chapter describes the new hardware-based tape encryption support available in i5/OS V5R4. The IBM TotalStorage TS1120 tape drive supports hardware-based encryption. The encryption key is supplied by an external key manager that can run either on i5/OS or on a Windows-based PC.

This chapter also describes the TS1120 and shows how to set up and use the Encryption Key Manager (EKM).

6.1 Using the Encryption Key Manager and TS1120 tape drive

Many clients are aware of possible ways to protect the system and the data on it to:

- Avoid data loss, which can be caused by a disaster such as fire or hurricane, or simply by a person accidentally deleting the wrong library.
- Protect the confidentiality of data from malicious intrusion or even theft.
- Comply with governmental security regulations such as the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (SOX).

The following means of physical security and logical security can help accomplish these needs:

- High Availability (HA) and disk mirroring solutions
- Journaling
- Daily backups
- Site security
- Network security (firewall)
- ► i5/OS built-in security functionalities

When you encrypt your data, you take this a step further. Not only does encryption protect your data from accidental loss, such as somebody erasing active data from a tape, but also from deliberate compromise, including a theft of tapes during transport to or from a tape vaulting facility, or unauthorized personnel accessing confidential data stored on tape. However, even as you build this level of security, you want to be able to share parts of the confidential data with trusted parties such as clients and partners.

Until now, tape encryption for the System i environment was possible only by implementing third-party solutions. The following Web site provides an overview:

http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/WebIndex/WP100790

Another solution is now available, based on a new encryption-capable tape drive, the TS1120. The encryption is managed by the TS3500 tape library. The section that follows looks at tape encryption methods.

6.1.1 Encryption methods

There are four ways to manage data encryption:

- System-managed, where data is encrypted by the host OS before being written to tape.
- Application-managed, where encryption of data is performed by a specific application, possibly running on another system. An example of an IBM application that can manage encryption is IBM Tivoli® Storage Manager.
- Appliance-managed, where a hardware device sits between the host OS and the tape device. Data is encrypted as it passes through the appliance.
- Library-managed, where a tape library system manages the encryption of data, using the encryption capabilities of an attached tape drive.

6.1.2 Encryption components

The tape encryption solution presented in this section is library-managed. It is built on the following three components:

- The IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform. The EKM server is used to store and manage the keys that are used for encryption.
- The TS3500 tape library system (Figure 6-1) to manage the encryption. For i5/OS, the supported features are 3584-L22, L23, D22, and D23. For firmware updates, refer to:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/lto/3584/downloading.html



Figure 6-1 TS3500 tape library system

► The TS1120 encryption-capable tape drive (Figure 6-2) to perform the encryption. Only the model or type 3592-E05 can perform encryption. All the new orders are encryption capable. For existing models 3592-E05, a field upgrade for encryption can be ordered.

For more information, refer to:

http://www-03.ibm.com/servers/storage/tape/ts1120/index.html

Order 3592-E05 FC 9592 (plant) or FC 5592 (field). Order 3584 Lxx FC 9900 to use the library-managed encryption. For the IBM Customer Engineer (CE) setup of encryption drives, order 3592-E05 FC 9596 or FC 5596.



Figure 6-2 TS1120

6.1.3 Planning for tape encryption

Before you implement tape encryption with the IBM EKM, decide on which platform you will install the EKM server, and which type of keystore you will use. Refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide,* GA76-0418. Also refer to 6.1.4, "Backup and recovery considerations with Encryption Key Manager" on page 140.

Regardless of which EKM server platform and keystore type you choose, each IBM EKM implementation with the TS1120 tape drive involves the following tasks. (Refer to 6.1.5, "Encryption Key Manager server on a PC" on page 142, 6.4, "Encryption Key Manager on i5/OS" on page 164, and 6.7, "Configuring your TS1120 tape drive for encryption" on page 184.)

- 1. Install the required operating system on your server.
- Install the correct version of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE[™]) or IBM Software Development Kit (SDK) for Java.
- 3. Install the IBM Java unrestricted policy files (US_export_policy.jar and local_policy.jar).
- 4. Install the IBM EKM Application (IBMKeyManagementServer.jar) and the IBM EKM Sample Configuration File (KeyManagerConfig.properties).
- 5. Install a tool to manage the type of keystore you have chosen.
- 6. Define the keystore and import or create keys into the keystore.
- 7. Configure EKM and define tape drives to EKM, or set the drive EKM configuration property .acceptUnknownDrives to on.
- 8. Start the EKM server.
- 9. Enable the TS1120 tape drive for encryption.

In this topic, only the installation of an EKM server on the System i platform and a Windows-based PC are discussed in detail. However, EKM is supported on a wide range of platforms. For installation on other platforms, refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager* component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide, GA76-0418.

You can find this and other publications, file downloads, and updated information on the IBM TotalStorage Web site under the TS1120 topic:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/tape/ts1120/downloading.html

In the Support for TS1120 Drive page, click **Downloadable files**. In the page that is displayed, select **IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java Platform**.

6.1.4 Backup and recovery considerations with Encryption Key Manager

When planning for EKM, be sure to consider the backup and recovery implications.

Keys can get lost in two ways:

- The keystore itself is encrypted.
- The keys are corrupted or the system they are running on is down.

Important: The impact of losing your keys is nothing less than disastrous. *All data* on the encrypted tapes become inaccessible, *without any means of recovery*. There are *no* "workarounds."

In the light of the probable consequences, keep the following points in mind:

Do not encrypt the keys you require for decrypting.

If you install your keystore on the same system from which you are backing up data, you risk backing up parts of the EKM to the encrypted tape as well. Although it might look easier to have your EKM server on the same system when all you want to do is restore just one library or a file, it will make your system *completely unrecoverable* if a scratch install is required. Therefore, it is recommended that you install the EKM server on a different system from the one on which you are encrypting data.

• Do not encrypt data for which you do not require encryption.

Consider what data you want to encrypt. LIC, i5/OS, system libraries, and directories do not contain confidential or sensitive data. Accidental loss can be covered by maintaining several copies of the system data. Do not encrypt data unnecessarily.

Combine these two recommendations, which can also help you save considerable time in the event of a complete system loss of your System i5. Because the EKM server is running on a different system, you can start recovering it independent of your System i5 server. At the same time, because you have not encrypted the system data on the System i5 server, you do not have to wait until the EKM server is up and running to start installing the System i environment in your recovery site. If your EKM server is going to be running the same system, you must first recover that system to a point where you can recover the EKM server if you have not encrypted any data up to that point.

► Plan for redundancy.

The critical part of your EKM server is the keystore that holds the keys. You can back it up to the media supported on the EKM server and keep this in a secured vault. However, because there is no recovery from lost keys, and because you cannot perform backup or restore functions if your only EKM server is down, it is recommended that you also build in redundancy by installing two EKM servers at least.

You can set up an EKM server on your Disaster Recovery (DR) site and synchronize it with the one on the main site. Alternately, you can just install a new EKM server on the DR site in the event of a real disaster or test disaster and import your keys into the keystore. Irrespective of the solution you choose, if you configure more than one EKM server, ensure that you run the same version of software and keystore type on both the servers, or alternately, test their compatibility.

As part of your Disaster Recovery Plan (DRP), make sure that you test the compatibility of the EKM servers and of the tape drives, because there is a possibility that the TS3500 tape library configuration at the DR site is different from yours. Configure the EKM server to recognize the new hardware, and configure the TS3500 tape library to point to the correct EKM server.

6.1.5 Encryption Key Manager server on a PC

This section describes the EKM program running on a PC desktop or a PC server.

Software requirements

Table 6-1 shows the minimum Windows operating system versions and the minimum SDK version.

| Table 6-1 | Minimum software | requirements | for Windows |
|-----------|------------------|--------------|-------------|
|-----------|------------------|--------------|-------------|

| Operating system | Runtime environment bundled with IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center - Limited Edition (TPC-LE) - LPP 5608-VC6 ^a | |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Windows 2000, Windows 2003 | IBM 64-bit runtime environment for Windows on AMD64/EM64T architecture, Java 2, Technology Edition, V5.0 IBM 32-bit runtime environment for Windows, Java 2, Technology Edition, V5.0 IBM 64-bit SDK for Windows on Intel® Itanium® architecture, Java 2, Technology Edition, V1.4.2 | |

a. This product can only be installed from CD. It is not available for download. For more information, visit http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/software/center/limited/index.html

After you have the required Windows operating system and the correct IBM Java Runtime Environment (JRE) for Windows installed (refer to "Installing the IBM Java Runtime Environment for Windows" on page 143):

- Install the IBM Java unrestricted policy files (refer to "Installing the unrestricted policy files" on page 146).
- Install the IBM EKM Application and the IBM EKM Sample Configuration file (refer to "Installing the Encryption Key Manager .jar and sample configuration file" on page 147).
- Install the proper tool to manage the keys in your type of keystore. In this example, we define a JCEKS keystore. Valid tools to manage this are the iKeyMan utility or the standard Java tool, keytool (refer to "Installing the iKeyman utility" on page 148).

Installing the IBM Java Runtime Environment for Windows

Perform the following tasks:

 Load the correct CD from the IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center - Limited Edition (TCP-LE) - LPP 5608-VC6 and select the JRE you want to install. In this example, we install JRE V5.0 SR2 (Windows/IA32). When the installation wizard opens, click Next, as shown in Figure 6-3.

| IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 - InstallShield Wizard | | × |
|--|---|---|
| | Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 | |
| | The InstallShield® Wizard will install IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 on your computer. To continue, click Next. | |
| | | |
| | | |

Figure 6-3 JRE InstallShield Wizard

- 2. Accept the license agreement.
- 3. The Choose Destination Location window (Figure 6-4) is displayed. You can change the destination folder if you want. Make a note of the folder path because you require it to start the EKM server at a later step. Click **Next**.

| IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 - InstallShield Wizard | × |
|---|---|
| Choose Destination Location Select folder where setup will install files. | |
| Setup will install IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 in the following folder. | |
| To install to this folder, click Next. To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder. | |
| Destination Folder C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\ InstallShield | |
| <u>≺B</u> ack <u>[N</u> ext>] Cancel | |

Figure 6-4 JRE destination folder

4. Click **No** when the installation wizard asks you whether you want to make this JRE the System JVM, as shown in Figure 6-5.

| Question | × |
|----------|--|
| 2 | Install this Java Runtime Environment as the System JVM? |
| | |

Figure 6-5 JRE as system JVM

5. The Start Copying Files window (Figure 6-6) is displayed. Click Next.

| IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 - InstallShield Wizard | <u> </u> |
|---|----------|
| Start Copying Files | |
| Review settings before copying files. | |
| Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files. | |
| Current Settings: | |
| Features JRE SDK Source JNI | |
| Target Directory C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\ | |
| | |
| InstallShield | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>Next></u> Cancel | |

Figure 6-6 Start Copying Files window

6. The Browser Registration window (Figure 6-7) is displayed. Select a browser to be associated with EKM. Click **Next**.

| IBM 32-bit Runtime Environment for Java 2, v5.0 - InstallShield Wizard | |
|--|--|
| Browser Registration | |
| Select the browsers you want to associate with Java(TM) Plug-in | |
| Microsoft Internet Explorer | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| InstallShield | |
| < <u>Back</u> <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | |

Figure 6-7 Browser Registration window

7. The InstallShield Wizard Complete window (Figure 6-8) is displayed. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.



Figure 6-8 InstallShield Wizard Complete window

8. Verify the installation and version of the JRE by entering the following commands in a DOS prompt (Figure 6-9):

```
cd C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin
java -version
```



Figure 6-9 Check version command prompt

Installing the unrestricted policy files

Perform the following tasks:

 Go to the following Web site, scroll down to the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) topic (Figure 6-10) and click IBM SDK Policy files:

http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/security/50



Figure 6-10 Java security site

2. Download the .zip file for V1.4.2 (Figure 6-11). The same files are used for V1.4 and V5.

| | | United States [char | ige] Terms of use |
|--|--|---------------------|---|
| | | | Search |
| Home Products | Services & industry solutions 🔰 Support & downloads | My IBM | |
| Unrestricted JCE Policy files for SDK 1.4 | Unrestricted JCE Policy files | s for SDK 1 | .4 |
| | Downloads | | Need help? |
| Related links | To properly configure your download, please review the information below. Select the appropriate offering. When you are done, press the "Continue" button at the bottom. | | → Sign up support |
| • warranty mio | | | → Sign up and Software Download FAQ |
| | | | → Software download support |
| | Offering | Platform Format | |
| | Unrestricted JCE Policy files for SDK 1.4.2 Version 1.4.2 Languages: English International | Java download | My Profile Welcome back, CVERELLEN → Edit your profile |
| | O Unrestricted JCE Policy files for SDK 1.4.1 Version 1.4.1 Languages: English International | Java download | → Sign out If you are not CVERELLEN, click <u>here</u> . |
| | Continue | | |

Figure 6-11 SDK version selection

 Uncompress the .zip file to get to the two .jar files. Replace the current US_export_policy.jar and local_policy.jar files in your C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\lib\security directory with the ones you just downloaded.

Installing the Encryption Key Manager .jar and sample configuration file

Perform the following tasks:

1. Download the IBM EKM Application (IBMKeyManagementServer.jar) and the IBM EKM Sample Configuration file (KeyManagerConfig.properties). Go to:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=1139&context=STCXRGL&dc=D400&uid=ssg1
S4000504

| DESCRIPTION | DOCUMENTATION | Download Options |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| Platform Multi- Platform Version Independent US English Byte Size 268588 Date 9/1/2006 | Intro Planning & User's Guide | IBM EKM Application - Ver. 08232006 FTP |
| Platform Multi- Platform Version Independent US English Byte Size 957 Date 9/1/2006 | Intro Planning & User's Guide | IBM EKM Sample Configuration File <u>FTP</u> |

Scroll down to find the files, as shown in Figure 6-12.

Figure 6-12 EKM downloads

- 2. Place the KeyManagerConfig.properties file into a directory of your choice.
- 3. Place the IBMkeyManagementServer.jar file into the directory C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\lib\ext\.

Installing the iKeyman utility

The iKeyman utility is part of the JRE you installed. You can start it from a DOS prompt (Figure 6-13) by entering the following command:

cd C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin java com.ibm.ikeyman.Ikeyman&

C:\>cd C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin

C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin>java com.ibm.gsk.ikeyman.Ikeyman&

Figure 6-13 Start iKeyman utility

For more details about the utility, download the *IBM Global Security Kit: Secure Sockets Layer Introduction and iKeyman User's Guide* at:

http://download.boulder.ibm.com/ibmdl/pub/software/dw/jdk/security/50/GSK7c_SSL_IK
M Guide.pdf

The standard Java tool, keytool, can also be used. Visit the Sun Java[™] Web site for details about keytool usage.

6.1.6 Creating a keystore

To create a keystore for the encryption keys to be used by the iKeyman utility, perform the following tasks:

Note: In iKeyman, a keystore is called key database and a key is called certificate.

1. After entering the **java** command to start the iKeyman utility, the IBM Key Management window (Figure 6-14) is displayed. To create a new keystore, click **New**.

| BM Key Management | |
|---|---------------------|
| iey Database File Create View Help | |
| | |
| Key database information | |
| DB-Type: | |
| File Name: | |
| Token Label: | |
| Key database content | |
| Personal Certificates | Receive |
| | Delete |
| | ViowEdit |
| | |
| | Import |
| | Recreate Request |
| | |
| | |
| | New Self-Signed |
| | Extract Certificate |
| | |
| o start, please select the Key Database File menu to work with a key database | |

Figure 6-14 iKeyMan utility

2. The New key database window (Figure 6-15) is displayed. In this example, a JCEKS-type keystore is created. Select **JCEKS** against the Key database type field. Enter the relevant details in the File Name and Location fields. The file will be created with the name you specify here. Make sure the extension of the file is .jks. In this example, we create a keystore called keystore_x.jks in the C:\EKM folder. Click **OK**.

| New | | × |
|-------------------|----------------|--------|
| Key database type | JCEKS | |
| File Name: | keystore_x.jck | Browse |
| Location: | Слеки | |
| | OK Cancel | |

Figure 6-15 Creating keystore

3. The Password Prompt window (Figure 6-16) is displayed. Specify a password to protect the keystore. (You will need this password later to access the keystore.) Click **OK**.

| Password Prompt | x |
|--------------------|---|
| Password: | |
| Password Strength: | |
| | |
| OK Clear Cancel | |

Figure 6-16 Password prompt

This completes the keystore creation. You must see the name of the keystore in the IBM Key Management window, as shown in Figure 6-17.

| 🧱 IBM Key Man | agement - [C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck |] | | |
|--|---|--|---|--------------------------------|
| Key Database <u>F</u> | ile <u>C</u> reate <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp | | | |
| D 🚄 I | - 😤 🕵 💶 | | | |
| | | Key database information | | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | | | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | | | |
| Token Label: | | | | |
| | | Key database content | | |
| Signer Certific | cates | | - | Add |
| verisign class verisign class | 1 public primary certification authors 4 public primary certification authors 4 public primary certification authors 4 public primary certification authors 5 public primary certification authority erver certification authority 2 public primary certification authors 2 public primary certification authors 3 public primary certification authors 4 a secure server ca 5 public primary certification authors 4 ca individual subscriber-persons 5 public primary certification authors 4 ca individual subscriber-persons 5 public primary certification authors 4 ca individual subscriber-persons 5 public primary certification authors 5 public prima | ority - g3 ority - g3 ority - g2 ority - g2 ority - g2 ority - g3 ority - g2 ority - g2 ority - g3 ority - g3 ority - g2 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| The requested | action has successfully completed | | | |

Figure 6-17 Keystore created

6.2 Creating keys in your keystore

This section describes how to create and move your keys into the keystore.

6.2.1 Creating a self-signed key

Perform the following tasks:

1. In the IBM Key Management window, click the **Create Certificate** icon on top of the page, which is highlighted in Figure 6-18.

| ey Database | File Create View Help | | |
|--|---|---|--------------------------------|
| | | | |
| | Key database information | 1 | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | | |
| Token Label: | | | |
| | Key database content | | |
| Signer Certif | ficates | - | Add |
| | | | |
| verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 | | Delete |
| verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 | | Delete |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 | | Delete View/Edit |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 | | Delete View/Edit |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority lobal client certification authority | ▲ | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 global client certification authority server certification authority ses 2 public primary certification authority - g3 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca ss 3 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 public primary certification authority - g2 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca ss 3 public primary certification authority ss 1 ca individual subscriber-persona not validated | | Delete View/Edit Extract |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 1 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority global client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca ss 3 public primary certification authority ss 1 ca individual subscriber-persona not validated ss 3 public primary certification authority - g3 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |

Figure 6-18 Creating self-signed key

2. The Create New Self-Signed Certificate window (Figure 6-19) opens. Specify a Key Label of your choice, but make sure that it does not contain any blanks. Select **X509 V3** from the Version menu, and **1024** from the Key Size menu. The Common Name field defaults to the computer name, but you can change it. Specify a value in the Organization field. Verify the Country or region and Validity Period fields. All other fields are optional. Click **OK**.

| 📴 Create New Self-Si | gned Certifi | cate | × |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---|
| Please provide the f | ollowing: | | |
| Key Label | | keylabel_selfsigned_1 | |
| Version | | X509 V3 💌 | |
| Key Size | | 1024 💌 | |
| Common Name | | admin-w6xapirqs | |
| Organization | | MyCompany | |
| Organization Unit | (optional) | | |
| Locality | (optional) | | |
| State/Province | (optional) | | |
| Zipcode | (optional) | | |
| Country or region | | US 🔻 | |
| Validity Period | | 365 Days | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | OK Reset Cancel | |

Figure 6-19 Creating self-signed key window

3. The key labels for the keys you create are displayed in the IBM Key Management window. In this example, we created two keys, as shown in Figure 6-20.

| IBM Key Ma | nagement - [C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | <] | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|---------------------|
| (ey Database | File Create View Help | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | Key database information | | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | | | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | | | |
| Token Label: | | | | |
| | | Key database content | | |
| Personal Ce | ertificates | | - | Receive |
| keylabel_se | lfsigned_2 | | | Delete |
| keylabel_se | lfsigned_1 | | | |
| | | | | View/Edit |
| | | | | Export/Import |
| | | | | Recreate Request |
| | | | | - |
| | | | | |
| | | | | New Self-Signed |
| | | | | Hold Soll-Signoul |
| | | | | Extract Certificate |
| 1 | | | | |
| he requested | l action has successfully completed | 1 | | |

Figure 6-20 Self-signed key created

6.2.2 Creating a certificate request

This procedure explains how to request a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA). A CA is a trusted third party. After you have created your certificate request, the CA signs it. The signed certificate is then held in your keystore. Follow these steps:

1. In the IBM Key Manager window, click the **Create new key and certificate request** icon on top of the page, shown highlighted in Figure 6-21.

| ey Database | File <u>C</u> reate <u>View H</u> elp | | |
|--|--|-------|--------------------------------|
| | | | |
| | Key database inform | ation | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | | |
| Token Label: | | | |
| | Key database cont | ent | |
| Signer Certif | ficates | | Add |
| verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas entrust.net g rsa secure s verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas verisign clas | ss 1 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 4 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 lobal client certification authority server certification authority ss 2 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 2 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca ss 3 public primary certification authority - g2 ss 3 secure server ca ss 3 public primary certification authority ss 1 ca individual subscriber-persona not validated ss 3 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 3 public primary certification authority - g3 ss 3 public primary certification authority - g3 | | Delete View/Edit Extract |

Figure 6-21 Creating new key and certificate request

2. The Create New Key and Create Certificate Request opens (Figure 6-22). Specify a Key Label of your choice that does not contain any blanks. Select **1024** from the Key Size menu. The Common Name field defaults to the computer name, but you can change it. Specify a value in the Organization field. Verify the Country or region. You can change the path and file name where the certificate request is stored. All other fields are optional.

| case provide the fi | mowniy. | | | | | | | 1 |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------|---------|------|--------|---|---|
| (ey Label | | keylabel_certreq | _1 | | | | | |
| Key Size | | 1024 💌 | | | | | | |
| Common Name | | admin-w6xapirq | 6 | | | | | |
| Organization | | MyCompany | | | | | | |
| Organization Unit | (optional) | | | | | | | |
| Locality | (optional) | | | | | | | |
| State/Province | (optional) | | | | | | | |
| Zipcode | (optional) | | | | | | | |
| Country or region | | US 🔻 | | | | | - | |
| nter the name of a | file in whic | h to store the cer | tificate r | equest: | | | | |
| C:\Program Files\IE | MiJava50iji | e\bin\certreq.arm | | | | Browse | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Figure 6-22 Create New Key and Certificate Request window

3. An Information window opens (Figure 6-23), which mentions that you must send the certificate request to a CA. Click **OK**. The CA then provides you with a signed certificate.

| Informatio | n | × |
|------------|---|---|
| i | A new certificate request has been successfully created in the file: C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin\certreq.arm. You must send the file to a certification authority to request a certificate. | |
| | OK | |

Figure 6-23 Information dialog box

4. The IBM Key Management window shows the key labels for the certificate requests you create. In this example, we created two certificate requests, as shown in Figure 6-24.

| 🧾 IBM Key Mar | nagement - [C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck] | |
|------------------|---|--|
| Key Database I | <u>F</u> ile <u>C</u> reate <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp | |
| | | |
| | Key database information | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | |
| Token Label: | | |
| | Key database content | |
| Personal Cer | rtificate Requests 🔹 New | |
| keylabel_cer | treq_2 | |
| keylabel_cer | treq_1 | |
| | View | |
| | Extract | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| A certificate re | equest is used to request a certificate from a certificate authority(CA). | |

Figure 6-24 Certificate request created

6.2.3 Importing keys from another keystore

This section explains how to import keys from another keystore, iKeyman instance, or import a signed certificate from a CA. Follow these steps:

1. In the IBM Key Manager window (Figure 6-25), select **Personal Certificates** from the Key database content field and click **Export/Import**.

| IBM Key Mai | nagement - [C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck] | |
|--------------|---|---------------------|
| ey Database | File <u>C</u> reate <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp | |
| | | |
| | Key database information | |
|)B-Type: | JCEKS database file | |
| ile Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | |
| oken Label: | | |
| | Key database content | |
| Personal Ce | rtificates | Receive |
| keylabel_sel | fsigned_2 | Delete |
| keylabel_sei | rsignea_1 | View/Edit |
| | | Export/Import |
| | | Recreate Request |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | New Self-Signed |
| | | Extract Certificate |
| | | |
| personal cer | rtificate has its associated private key in the database. | |

Figure 6-25 Selecting the Export/Import keys option

2. In the Export/Import window (Figure 6-26), select **Import Key** and specify the key file (that is, the keystore type, **JCEKS**), the File Name, and the Location of the keystore from which you want to import the keys. Click **OK**.

| Export/Impor | rt Key |
|---------------|------------------|
| Choose Ac | tion Type |
| O Export | Key 🔘 Import Key |
| | |
| Key file type | JCERS |
| File Name: | keystore.jck |
| | |

Figure 6-26 Export/Import Key dialog box

3. Authenticate to the keystore from which you want to import the keys by entering the password (Figure 6-27). Click **OK**.



Figure 6-27 Password Prompt

4. The Select from Key Label List window (Figure 6-28) opens, listing the key labels for all of the keys stored in the keystore. Select the key labels you want to import and click **OK**.

| Select from Key Label List of [C:\Imported Keystore\keystore.jck] | × |
|---|--------|
| Please select keys from the following key list of the source key database | ок |
| verisign class 1 public primary certification authority - g3 | Cancel |
| verisign class 4 public primary certification authority - g3 | |
| verisign class 1 public primary certification authority - g2 | |
| verisign class 4 public primary certification authority - g2 | |
| verisign class 2 public primary certification authority | |
| entrust.net global client certification authority | |
| rsa secure server certification authority | |
| verisign class 2 public primary certification authority - g3 | |
| verisign class 2 public primary certification authority - g2 | |
| verisign class 3 secure server ca | |
| verisign class 3 public primary certification authority | |
| verisign class 1 ca individual subscriber-persona not validated | |
| verisign class 3 public primary certification authority - g3 | |
| verisign class 3 public primary certification authority - g2 | |
| thawte premium server ca | |
| verisign class 1 public primary certification authority | |
| entrust.net global secure server certification authority | |
| thawte personal basic ca | |
| thawte personal premium ca | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_2 | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_1 | |
| thawte personal freemail ca | |
| verisign class 2 onsite individual ca | |
| verisign international server ca - class 3 | |
| thawte server ca | |
| entrust.net certification authority (2048) | |
| entrust.net client certification authority | |
| entrust.net secure server certification authority | |
| | |
| | |

Figure 6-28 Selecting key label

5. If any of the key labels for the keys that are being imported already exists in the keystore, a Duplicate Key Label warning will be displayed (Figure 6-29). Note that the iKeyman import function has added an asterisk (*) to the duplicate key label name in order to ensure that you do not overwrite the keys by accident. You can either accept the name change (by clicking **OK**), or edit the key label yourself (by clicking **Clear**).

| Duplicate Key Labe | | × |
|--------------------|--|---|
| An existing key al | ready has label: keylabel_selfsigned_2 | |
| New Key Label: | keylabel_selfsigned_2* | |
| | | |
| | OK Clear Cancel | |

Figure 6-29 Duplicate Key Label dialog box

6. Regardless of the duplicate key labels, you are always provided with the opportunity to change the key labels before you import the keys. Select the key label you want to change, enter the new name, and click **Apply**, as shown in Figure 6-30.

| Change Labels | × |
|--|--------|
| Would you like to change any of these labels before completing the import process? | ок |
| Select a label to change: | Cancel |
| keylabel_selfsigned_3 | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_1* | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Enter a new label: | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_4 | |
| Apply | |

Figure 6-30 Change Labels window

7. The change is reflected in the Select area, as shown in Figure 6-31. Click OK.

| Change Labels | × |
|--|--------|
| Would you like to change any of these labels before completing the import process? | ок |
| Select a label to change: | Cancel |
| keylabel_selfsigned_3 | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_4 | |
| | |
| Enter a new label: | |
| keylabel_selfsigned_4 |] |
| Аррьу | |

Figure 6-31 Applying label change

8. The imported keys are now displayed in your keystore in the IBM Key Manager window, as shown in Figure 6-32.

| 🧱 IBM Key Mar | nagement - [C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck] | |
|------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| Key Database I | jile <u>C</u> reate <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp | |
| | | |
| | Key database information | |
| DB-Type: | JCEKS database file | |
| File Name: | C:\EKM\keystore_x.jck | |
| Token Label: | | |
| | Key database content | |
| Personal Cer | tificates 💌 | Receive |
| keylabel_set | fsigned_2 | Delete |
| keylabel_set kevlabel_set | fsigned_1 fsigned_3 | ViourEdit |
| keylabel_set | fsigned_4 | view/cut |
| | | Export/Import |
| | | Recreate Request |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | New Self-Signed |
| | | Extract Certificate |
| | | |

Figure 6-32 Keys are imported

6.3 Configuring Encryption Key Manager

Now, define to the EKM server. This is where the keys and the information on the tape drives are stored. The KeyManagerConfig.properties file is only a sample configuration. Adapt it to point the EKM server to the keystore you created, and the drive table file.

6.3.1 Editing the .properties file

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the KeyManagerConfig.properties file. Choose Select the program from a list, as shown in Figure 6-33. Click OK.

| Window | s | | | | | | <u>? ×</u> |
|--|---|------------|----------------|----------|----|--------|------------|
| ി | Winde | ows cannot | open this file | : | | | |
| 2 | File: | KeyMana | igerConfig.pr | operties | | | |
| To ope can go progra | To open this file, Windows needs to know what program created it. Windows can go online to look it up automatically, or you can manually select from a list of programs on your computer. | | | | | | |
| What do you want to do? | | | | | | | |
| O Use the <u>Web</u> service to find the appropriate program | | | | | | | |
| Select the program from a list | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | ОК | Cancel | |

Figure 6-33 Selecting the program prompt

2. Use a text editor such as Notepad to edit the file (Figure 6-34). Click **OK**.

| Open Wi | ith | ? × |
|---------------------|--|---------------|
| \bigcirc | Choose the program you want to use to open this file: File: KeyManagerConfig.properties | |
| _ <u>Progra</u> | ams | |
| | Internet Explorer Notepad Paint Paint Shop Pro 9 Windows Media Player Windows Picture and Fax Viewer WordPad | |
| Тур | e a description that you want to use for this kind of file: | |
| | Always use the selected program to open this kind of file | |
| If the p for the | rogram you want is not in the list or on your computer, you car appropriate program on the Web. | ı <u>look</u> |
| | OK Cancel | |

Figure 6-34 Open With window

- 3. Figure 6-35 on page 161 shows the sample configuration file with the default values. Some of the values must be changed and some must be added. Strictly respect the syntax, and do not leave any trailing blanks. Do not use "\" in path names; they are interpreted by Java as escape characters. Use "/" instead.
 - Audit.handler.file.directory

Specify where you want EKM to store the audit log. This directory must exist before you start the EKM Admin console.

 Admin.ssl.keystore.name Admin.ssl.truststore.name TransportListener.ssl.keystore.name TransportListener.ssl.truststore.name config.keystore.file

Specify the path and the file name of the keystore.

Admin.ssl.keystore.password
 Admin.ssl.truststore.password
 TransportListener.ssl.keystore.password
 TransportListener.ssl.truststore.password
 config.keystore.password

Specify the keystore password. You do not have to specify the password, but if you do not, you will be asked to enter it when you start the EKM server.

Config.drivetable.file.url

Specify the path and the file name where you want EKM to store the information on the drives that are known to EKM. The path must exist before starting the EKM Admin console. You can select the file name yourself. It must have a .txt extension. It will be created by the EKM. The file path must be preceded by FILE://.

debug.output.file

Specify the path and the file name of the debug file you want to create. The file must have an extension of .log.

- TransportListener.tcp.timeout

Specify 120 (that is, the number in minutes).

- drive.acceptUnknownDrives

Set this property to true if you want the EKM server to automatically add tape drives to the EKM drive table when they contact EKM. If you decide against allowing tape drives to be added automatically, in which case you must add the tape drives manually, set this value to false. (See 6.3.4, "Adding tape drives to the EKM drive table" on page 163.)

| 📕 KeyManagerConfig.properties - Notepad | |
|---|--------------------------|
| <u>File Edit Format View Help</u> | |
| Audit.event.outcome = success,failure Audit.event.types = all Audit.eventQueue.max = 0 Audit.handler.file.directory = keymanager/audit Audit.handler.file.name = kms_audit.log Audit.handler.file.size = 10000 Admin.ssl.keystore.name = testkeys Admin.ssl.truststore.name = testkeys Config.drivetable.file.url = FILE://keymanager/o debug = none debug.output = simple_file debug.output = simple_file debug.output.file = keymanager/debug fips = off TransportListener.ssl.clientauthentication = 0 TransportListener.ssl.keystore.name = keymanager TransportListener.ssl.keystore.type = jceks TransportListener.ssl.protocols = SSL_TLS TransportListener.ssl.truststore.name = testkeys TransportListener.ssl.truststore.type = jceks TransportListener.ssl.truststore.type = jceks TransportListener.top.port = 3801 config.keystore.file = keymanager/testkeys config.keystore.type = jceks | drivetable •/testkeys |
| | |

Figure 6-35 Default properties

Figure 6-36 shows the KeyManagerConfig.properties file with the correct values for the configuration in this example.



Figure 6-36 Changed properties

4. Save the changes to the KeyManagerConfig.properties file.

6.3.2 Starting the EKM Admin Console (command prompt)

Do not modify the KeyManagerConfig.properties file when the EKM Admin console is running because the changes will be lost. If you want to make changes, end the EKM Admin console first, and restart it after you have made the changes. The properties file is read only at startup and the values are stored in memory. When the EKM Admin console is ended, it writes the values in memory to the KeyManagerConfig.properties file in case any changes were made using the EKM commands when the admin/server is up. For information about EKM commands, refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide*, GA76-0418-00.

Enter the following commands from a DOS prompt to start the EKM Admin console:

cd C:/Program Files/IBM/Java50/jre/bin
java com.ibm.keymanager.KMSAdminCmd KeyManagerConfig_full_file_path_name

Note: The path name for the KeyManagerConfig.properties file must not contain blanks.

After the command has been entered the DOS # prompt is displayed and you can continue to type in the relevant EKM console command.

6.3.3 Starting and stopping the EKM server

To start the EKM server, enter startekm at the prompt. To stop it, enter stopekm (Example 6-1).

Example 6-1 Starting the EKM Admin console and the EKM server

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\Java50\jre\bin>java com.ibm.keymanager.KMSAdminCmd
C:/EKM/keymanagerco
nfig.properties
# startekm
Loaded drive key store successfully
Starting the Encryption Key Manager 1.0
Processing Arguments
Processing
Server is started
# stopekm
Stopping the EKM admin service...
#
```

6.3.4 Adding tape drives to the EKM drive table

If you decide against allowing tape drives to be added automatically, specify drive.acceptUnknownDrives = false, but in that case, you must add the tape drives manually before using EKM.

Start the EKM Admin console and enter the following command from the command prompt for each drive:

adddrive -drivename drivename -rec1 alias1 -rec2 alias2

drivename is the serial number of the drive (for example, 000001365054). The serial number must comprise 12 characters. Use leading zeroes.

-rec1 and -rec2 are optional parameters. They are the default keys assigned to your drive in the event that the key requested for use with a cartridge loaded in your drive is not present in the keystore.

adddrive is only one of the available EKM commands. For more information about EKM commands, refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide*, GA76-0418.

6.4 Encryption Key Manager on i5/OS

This section describes the installation requirements and implementation steps involved in running an EKM on i5/OS.

6.4.1 Software requirements

Table 6-2 shows the minimum i5/OS versions and their corresponding minimum SDK versions.

| i5/OS | IBM SDK | Licensed program feature codes and PTF level | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| V5R3 | IBM Developer Kit for Java - Java Developer Kit 5.0 | 5722JV1 *BASE and option 7 The latest Java group PTF SF99269^a PTF SI25093 for 5722SS1 Option 3 (Extended base directory support) 5722AC3 (Cryptographic Access Provider) | | |
| V5R4 IBM Deve Platform, (J2SE™) | IBM Developer Kit for Java - Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE™) 5.0 32-bit | 5722JV1 *BASE and Option 8 Install SR3 or SR2 for J2SE 5.0: SR3: PTF number is not yet available at the time of publication SR2: PTF SI24375 for 5722JV1 | | |
| | | The latest Java group PTF SF99291^a PTF SI25094 for 5722SS1 Option 3 (Extended base directory support) Cryptographic Access Provider is included in the base in V5R4 | | |

Table 6-2 Supported i5/OS versions and their corresponding SDK versions

a. For the latest level, refer to the following Web site:

http://www-912.ibm.com/s_dir/sline003.NSF/GroupPTFs?OpenView&view=GroupPTFs

After you have the required operating system, SDK (JDK[™] or J2SE), and the PTFs installed, as shown in Table 6-2:

- Install the IBM Java unrestricted policy files (refer to 6.4.2, "Installing the unrestricted policy files" on page 164)
- Install the IBM EKM Application and the IBM EKM Sample Configuration file (see 6.4.3, "Installing the Encryption Key Manager .jar and sample configuration file" on page 165)
- ► Install the proper tool to manage the keys in your type of keystore. In this example, we defined an IBMi5OSkeystore-type keystore. The interface to manage this type of keystore is the Digital Certificate Manager (DCM) GUI (refer to 6.4.4, "Installing Digital Certificate Manager" on page 165). The iKeyman utility enables you to create the JCEKS keystore type (refer to Installing the iKeyman utility in 6.1.5, "Encryption Key Manager server on a PC" on page 142).

6.4.2 Installing the unrestricted policy files

There are two ways in which to get the unrestricted policy files:

 Downloading the unrestricted policy files from the IBM Web site (refer to "Installing the unrestricted policy files" on page 146) and placing the files in the /QOpenSys/QIBM/ProdData/JavaVM/jdk50/32bit/jre/lib/security/ directory in the Installable File System (IFS).

- ► Installing the unrestricted policy files through a PTF.
 - For i5/OS V5R3, install SI24671 for 5722JV1
 - For i5/OS V5R4, install SI24672 for 5722JV1, and then copy the unrestricted policy files from /qibm/proddata/java400/jdk15/lib/security/ to /QOpenSys/QIBM/ProdData/JavaVM/jdk50/32bit/jre/lib/security/

6.4.3 Installing the Encryption Key Manager .jar and sample configuration file

For i5/OS V5R3, install PTF SI25093 for 5722SS1. This PTF installs the EKM code, the default configuration properties file, and the script file.

For i5/OS V5R4, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Install PTF SI25094 for 5722SS1. This PTF installs the default configuration properties file and the script file.
- 2. If J2SE V5.0 SR2 is installed (PTF SI24375), download the IBMKeyManagementServer.jar file from the IBM TotalStorage site (refer to the TS1120 topic). Go to:

http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/tape/ts1120/downloading.html

Click **Downloadable files**. On the page that is displayed, select **IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java Platform**. Scroll down to find the file, as shown in Figure 6-37 and place it in the /QOpenSys/QIBM/ProdData/JavaVM/jdk50/32bit/jre/lib/ext/ directory.

| DESCRIPTION | DOCUMENTATION | Download Options |
|---|----------------------------------|---|
| Platform Multi- Platform Version Independent US English Byte Size 268588 Date 9/1/2006 | Intro Planning & User's Guide | IBM EKM Application - Ver. 08232006 FTP |
| Platform Multi- Platform Version Independent US English Byte Size 957 Date 9/1/2006 | Intro Planning & User's Guide | IBM EKM Sample Configuration File FTP |

Figure 6-37 EKM downloads

When SR3 becomes available, it contains the EKM code. Therefore, you do not have to download the IBMKeyManagementServer.jar file.

6.4.4 Installing Digital Certificate Manager

In this example, we define an IBMi5OSkeystore-type keystore. The interface to manage this type of keystore is the DCM GUI. The iKeyman utility enables you to create the JCEKS keystore type ("Installing the iKeyman utility" on page 148). Perform the following tasks:

- 1. Verify that these licensed programs are installed on your system. If not, install them first:
 - 5722SS1 option 34: DCM
 - 5722DG1: IBM Hypertext Protocol Server (HTTP) Server for i5/OS
- 2. Open iSeries Navigator and select on your system.

 Select Network → Servers → TCP/IP and check in the right pane to see whether the HTTP Administration server is started. If not, right-click HTTP Administration to start it (Figure 6-38).



Figure 6-38 Starting HTTP Administration server

 In a Web browser, go to: http://IP address:2001
| - Edit Marco de Bacharada E i um | den usta | | |
|----------------------------------|--|--|------------|
| ck Forward Reload Stop | dow <u>H</u> elp 192.168.4.1:2001/ Relation-Luxa Relation/Luxambourg in 1 | SM Surtome Informati | arch 🀳 🕶 🄟 |
| (C) IBM Corporation 2000 | i5/OS Tasks | RCHAS07.RCHLAND.IBM.COM | |
| | Image: Display state of the server is a server server is a | nd deploy applications 10 your web applications 15 | |
| Related task information | i5/OS Web-Based Help Server Administer the Web-based help server | Help (Regires JanScript) | |

5. The i5/OS Tasks window is shown. Select **Digital Certificate Manager** (Figure 6-39).

Figure 6-39 i5/0S Tasks window

This takes you to the DCM start page (Figure 6-40 on page 168). The installation is complete.

6.5 Creating a keystore in DCM

This section shows you how to create the certificate store in DCM and how to move the keys into the store.

Note: In DCM, a keystore is called *certificate store* and a key is called a *certificate*.

To create a keystore, perform the following tasks:

1. From the DCM start page (Figure 6-40), select Create New Certificate Store.



Figure 6-40 DCM start page

2. In the Create New Certificate Store window, select **Other System Certificate Store** and click **Continue**, as shown in Figure 6-41.



Figure 6-41 Creating new certificate store 1

 Select No - Do not create a certificate in the certificate store. Click Continue (Figure 6-42).

| | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🕹 IBM. |
|---|--|
| | Create a Certificate in New Certificate Store |
| | Certificate store: Other System Certificate Store |
| | The new certificate store will contain the default list of Certificate Authority (CA) certificates. Do you want to create a certificate in the |
| Select a Certificate Store | certificate store? |
| Expand All Collapse All | ○ Yes - Create a certificate in the certificate store. I No - Do not create a certificate in the certificate store. |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | Continue |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on Your</u> <u>PC</u> | |
| Manage User Certificates | |
| Manage CRL Locations | |
| Manage LDAP Location | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | |
| Secure Connection | |

Figure 6-42 Creating new certificate store 2

4. In the Certificate Store Name and Password window (Figure 6-43), specify the Certificate store path and file name.

If the path does not exist in your System i5 environment, create it first by using the CRTDIR command. The file name can be anything but must have a .kdb extension. This file is created automatically. You must specify the same path and file name in your EKM configuration file. Specify a password for the certificate ("key") store and click **Create**.

Important: The keystore is now in a user directory of the i5/OS IFS. Be careful *not* to back up the keystore to the encrypted tapes, because you will not be able to recover the keys, and without the keys you cannot access any of the data on your encrypted tapes. There is *no recovery* from lost keys.

| | D | Digital Certific | ate Manage | r | 0 IEM. |
|---|---|---------------------------|---------------------|--|--------|
| | Certificate Store Name and Pas | sword | | | |
| | Certificate store: Other System Certif | icate Store | | | |
| | Enter the path and filename for the certifi | icate store you want crea | ated. You must also | specify a password for the certificate sto | ore. |
| Select a Certificate Store | Example certificate store file name: | MYDIRECTORY/MY | FILE KDB | | |
| Expand All Collapse All | Certificate store path and filename: | /EKM/keystore_i.kdb | | (required) | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | Certificate store password: | ****** | (required) | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | Confirm password: | ***** | (required) | | |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your PC | Continue Cancel | | | | |
| Manage User Certificates | | | | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | | | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | | | | | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | | | | | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | | | | | |
| Secure Connection | | | | | |

Figure 6-43 Certificate Store name and password

The Certificate Store Created window opens (Figure 6-44 on page 170). Your keystore is created successfully.

6.5.1 Creating keys

To create your keys, generate them with DCM.

Accessing the keystore to generate keys

Perform the following tasks:

1. Choose Select a Certificate Store in the left panel of the DCM window (Figure 6-44).

| | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🖉 IBM. |
|---|--|
| | Certificate Store Created |
| A DOTE | Message The certificate store has been created. |
| Select a Cortificate Store | Fue name: /EK.W/Reystore_LKdb |
| Select a Centilicate Store | Note: You must click on the Select a Certificate Store button in the left frame to refresh the Digital Certificate Manager (DCM) to work |
| Expand All Collapse All | with this new certificate store. |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | OK |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on Your</u> <u>PC</u> | |
| Manage User Certificates | |
| Manage CRL Locations | |
| Manage LDAP Location | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | |
| Secure Connection | |
| | |

Figure 6-44 Certificate Store Created window

| | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🕹 IBM. |
|---|---|
| | Select a Certificate Store |
| | Select the certificate store that you want to open. |
| | Local Certificate Authority (CA) |
| Select a Certificate Store | ○ *SYSTEM |
| | ○ *OBJECTSIGNING |
| Expand All Collapse All | Conter System Certificate Store |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | Continue Cancel |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your PC | |
| Manage User Certificates | |
| Manage CRL Locations | |
| Manage LDAP Location | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | |
| Secure Connection | |
| | |

2. Select Other System Certificate Store and click Continue (Figure 6-45).

Figure 6-45 Select a Certificate Store window

3. In the Certificate Store and Password panel, enter the keystore file name you created earlier (enter the complete path name) and the password as shown in Figure 6-46, and click **Continue**.

| | Digital Certificate Manager | 0 IEM. |
|--|---|--------|
| | Certificate Store and Password | |
| Charles and a state of the stat | Enter the file name and password for the certificate store that you want to open. | |
| | Certificate type: Server or client | |
| Select a Certificate Store | Example certificate store file name: /MYDIRECTORY/MYFILE.KDB | |
| Expand All Collapse All | Certificate store path and filename: /EKM/keystore_i.kdb | |
| | Certificate store password: | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | Continue Reset Password Cancel | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your <u>PC</u> | | |
| ▶ <u>Manage User Certificates</u> | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | | |
| Secure Connection | | |

Figure 6-46 Certificate Store authentication

4. The Current Certificate Store window opens (Figure 6-47). You are now "inside" the keystore you selected and can start managing it.

| | Digital Certificate Manager | IBM₀ |
|---|--|-----------|
| | Current Certificate Store | |
| | You have selected to work with the certificate store listed below. The left frame is being refreshed to show the task list for this certificate. Select a task from the left frame to begin working with this certificate store. | rtificate |
| Select a Certificate Store | Certificate type: Server or client | |
| | Certificate store path and filename: /EKM/KEYSTORE_I.KDB | |
| Expand All Collapse All | | |
| ▶ <u>Fast Path</u> | | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on Your</u> <u>PC</u> | | |
| Manage Certificates | | |
| Manage Certificate Store | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | |
| <u>Manage LDAP Location</u> | | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | | |
| | | |
| Secure Connection | | |
| | | |

Figure 6-47 Current Certificate Store window

There are two ways in which to work with the keystore you selected:

 In the left column, select Fast Path → Work with server and client certificates (Figure 6-48).

| Select a Certificate Store | ^ | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🕹 IBM. |
|---|---|--|
| Expand All Collapse All | | Fast Path |
| ▼ <u>Fast Path</u> ■ <u>Work with server and client</u> certificates ■Work with CA certificates | | Select the type of action that you want to perform. Work with server and client certificates |
| Work with user certificates Work with certificate requests Work with CRL locations | | You can add, delete, export, view or renew a server or client certificate in the certificate store. In addition, you can import a certificate into the certificate store, create a new certificate or set a certificate as the default certificate for the certificate store. • Work with CA certificates |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> <u>Install Local CA Certificate on</u> Your PC | = | You can view, delete or export a Certificate Authority (CA) certificate. In addition, you can import a CA certificate into this certificate store and enable or disable a CA certificate in this certificate store. Work with user certificates You can create, delete, view or assign a user certificate. |
| ✓ Manage Certificates View certificate Renew certificate Import certificate Export certificate Delete certificate Validate certificate Check expiration Set CA status | | Work with certificate requests You can view or delete certificate requests for the certificate store. Work with CRL locations You can add, view, update or remove a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) for the certificate store. Continue Cancel |
| Eupdate CRL location assignment Assign a user certificate Manage Certificate Store (| • | |

Figure 6-48 DCM Fast Path window

- Alternatively, select Manage Certificates in the left panel (Figure 6-49).

| | Digital Certificate Manager @ | IBM. |
|--|--|------|
| 200 | Manage Certificates Select the type of action that you want to perform | |
| Select a Certificate Store | View certificate - View information pertaining to a certificate. Renew certificate - Replace an existing certificate with a new certificate. | |
| Expand All Collapse All | Import certificate - Add a certificate to this certificate store. Export certificate - Cover a certificate to a file or another certificate store. | |
| ► Fast Path | O Delete certificate - Remove a certificate from this certificate store or remove a certificate from a specific user identity. | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | Validate certificate - Validate a certificate in this certificate store. Check expiration - Check the expiration dates of certificates. | |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your PC Vongee Certificates | Set CA status - Enable or disable a Certificate Authority (CA) certificate in this certificate store. Update CRL location assignment - Assign the Certificate Revocation List (CRL) location for a Certificate Authority (CA) | ı). |
| View certificate Renew certificate | Assign a user certificate - Assign a user certificate to a user identity. | |
| Import certificate Export certificate | | |
| Delete certificate Validate certificate | | |
| = <u>Check expration</u> = <u>Set CA status</u> = <u>Undate CPL location</u> | | |
| = <u>Cpdate CR. Iccatori</u> assignment = <u>Assign a user certificate</u> | | |
| | | |

Figure 6-49 Manage Certificates window

6.5.2 Creating a private/public key pair in your keystore

This procedure explains how to request a certificate from a CA. A CA is a trusted third party. After you create your certificate request, the CA signs it. The signed certificate is then held in your keystore.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Click the **Create Certificate** option in the left column. In the right panel, select **Server or client certificate**, and click **Continue**, as shown in Figure 6-50.

| | Digital Certificate Manager | 0 IBM. |
|---|--|--------|
| | Create Certificate | |
| A CONTRACTOR OF THE OWNER | Select the type of certificate that you want to create. | |
| Select a Certificate Store | Server or client certificate Server or client certificate for another server running i5/OS or OS/400 | |
| Expand All Collapse All | ○ User certificate | |
| Fast Path | Continue Cancel | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on Your</u> <u>PC</u> | | |
| Manage Certificates | | |
| Manage Certificate Store | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | | |
| Secure Connection | | |

Figure 6-50 Create Certificate window

 Select VeriSign or other Internet Certificate Authority (CA) and click Continue (Figure 6-51).



Figure 6-51 Select a Certificate Authority window

3. In the Create Certificate window, select **1024** for the Key size and enter the certificate ("key") label. You can choose the name yourself, but make sure that you specify the same label as the alias1 key label in the EKM configuration file. Complete the other fields and click **Continue** (Figure 6-52).

| | | Digital Certifica | ate Manager | 0 IEM. |
|---|------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------|
| | Create Certificat | te | | |
| Che Star | Certificate type: Se | erver or client | | |
| and and a second a se | Certificate store: / | EKM/KEYSTORE_I.KDB | | |
| Select a Certificate Store | Use this form to creat | te a certificate in the certificate store listed a | bove. | |
| Expand All Collapse All | Key size: | 1024 💌 (bits) | | |
| Fast Path | Certificate label: | keylabel_certreq_1 | (required) | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | | | | |
| Create New Certificate Store | C | ertificate Information | | |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your | | | | |
| PC | Common name: | EKMCertificate | (required) | |
| Manage Certificates | Organization unit: | | | |
| Manage Certificate Store | Organization name | MyCompany | (required) | |
| Manage CRL Locations | Locality or city: | | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | State or province: | MvCity | (required minimum of 3 characters) | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | Country or region: | US (remired) | (required minimum of 2 characters) | |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | country of region. | oo (required) | | |
| Secure Connection | Continue Cance | | | |

Figure 6-52 Creating a certificate

4. In the next window, the certificate request is displayed (Figure 6-53). Copy the request data, including the BEGIN and the END REQUEST lines and paste them into the certificate request form the CA has provided. Click **OK** to complete the creation.

| | Digital Certificate Manager @ IBM. |
|---|---|
| | Certificate Request Created The certificate request data is shown below. Copy and paste the request data, including both the Begin request and End request lines, into the form that the Certificate Authority (CA) provided. |
| Select a Certificate Store Expand All Collapse All | Warning: If you exit this page, the certificate request data is lost. Therefore, make sure you carefully copy and paste the data into the Certificate Authority (CA) form or into a file for later use. |
| Fast Path | MIIBIjCB9AIBADBLWQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzEPWAOGAIUECBMGTXIDaXRSNRIwEAYD |
| Create Certificate | Vydewineowydziadaidae i aw ogwani bw y hunter a prawia j i artin of nadosoby Sib 30 De BaQuaA (And CB) cyfarg Od o makwi j YC/mY2/JPqou 2P Pyr Lyn Sdin Qi Cbym |
| Create New Certificate Store | VwHDAI4dD/iUFTPBJGuiE2fp224CI4+hNbqo1B/AtTnqoGKPg1SIdMweUvsqpziq |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on Your</u> <u>PC</u> | HOLTJYELDSINGUTWOZITACZINCKNAREERQADYEERQADYEERQCUGegPAZBycfhD/wBWItxG gp53MgIDAQABoAAwQQYXKoZInvcNAREERQADYEERQCUGegPAZBycfhD/wBWItxG nnCeu6T8crxKEJXdCkwPkYnAFzj74bnYn4ANQpQWRA3is9xeVRiN177Ic99Lk913 |
| Manage Certificates | FvK/LvcZ33LfzyIfWewk3gY53F5LkbC0jnwYp6Xw3liQy3QsWsBAfsCpQc0rYMki YPv2ShCNHmxKZdLGUkc= |
| Manage Certificate Store | END NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST |
| Manage CRL Locations | |
| Manage LDAP Location | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | OK |
| Return to i5/OS Tasks | |
| Secure Connection | |

Figure 6-53 Certificate Request Created window

The CA returns a signed certificate to you. Store the file on System i5, in the IFS.

6.5.3 Importing a key into the keystore

To import a key into the keystore, perform the following tasks:

1. Import the signed certificate into your keystore. You can use this method to import keys from another keystore. Click **Work with server and client certificates**, verify that the Certificate store is correct, and click **Import**, as shown in Figure 6-54.

| | | | - |
|--|-----|---|---|
| | ^ | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🕹 IBM. | |
| | | Work with Server and Client Certificates | |
| and the second designed and th | | Certificate type: Server or client | |
| Select a Certificate Store | | Message No certificates found for this certificate store. | |
| Expand All Collapse All | | | |
| <u>Fast Path</u> <u>Work with server and client</u> <u>certificates</u> <u>Work with CA certificates</u> | III | Import Create Cancel | |
| Work with user certificates Work with certificate requests Work with CRL locations | | | |
| Create Certificate | | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | | 1 |
| Install Local CA Certificate on Your PC | | | |
| Manage Certificates | | | |
| Manage Certificate Store | | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | | | |
| <u>Manage PKIX Request Location</u> | ~ | | |
| < III > | | | |

Figure 6-54 Importing the signed certificate

2. Enter the complete IFS path name of the file in which you pasted the signed certificate data and click **Continue**, as shown in Figure 6-55.

| | ^ | Digital Contificate Manager | a |
|--|-----|--|--------|
| | | Digital Certificate Manager | L DILO |
| | | Import Server or Client Certificate | |
| Carl Star | | Certificate type: Server or client | |
| | | Certificate store: /EKM/KEYSTORE_I.KDB | |
| Select a Certificate Store | | Specify the fully qualified path and file name of the certificate that you want to import. | |
| Expand All Collapse All | | Example path and file name: /MYDIRECTORY/MYFILE.EXT | |
| ▼<u>Fast Path</u> Work with server and client certificates Work with CA certificates | III | Import file: /EKM/EKM KDB | |
| <u>Work with user certificates</u> <u>Work with certificate requests</u> Work with CRL locations | | Continue Cancel | |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | | |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on</u> <u>Your PC</u> | | | |
| Manage Certificates | | | |
| Manage Certificate Store | | | |
| Manage CRL Locations | | | |
| Manage LDAP Location | | | |
| Manage PKIX Request Location | ~ | | |

Figure 6-55 Importing the file

3. Enter the password for the keystore from which you want to import the keys, and specify the key label. Click **Continue** (Figure 6-56).

| | ^ | Digital Certificate Manager 🛛 🛛 IBM. |
|--|---|--|
| | | Import Server or Client Certificate |
| Che State | | Certificate type: Server or client |
| | | Certificate store: /EKM/KEYSTORE_I.KDB |
| Select a Certificate Store | | |
| Expand All Collapse All | Ш | Enter the encryption password for the file that contains the certificate. If you want to provide a label for the certificate, enter the label below. |
| ▼ <u>Fast Path</u> | | Password: (required) |
| Work with server and client certificates | | Certificate label: keylabel_1 |
| Work with CA certificates | | |
| Work with user certificates Work with certificate requests | | |
| Work with CRL locations | | Continue Cancel |
| <u>Create Certificate</u> | | |
| <u>Create New Certificate Store</u> | | |
| <u>Install Local CA Certificate on</u> <u>Your PC</u> | | |
| ▼ <u>Manage Certificates</u> | | |
| Renew certificate | | |
| Import certificate | | |
| Export certificate | | |
| Delete certificate | ~ | |
| < | | |

Figure 6-56 Importing the key

This key is then imported into your keystore.

6.5.4 Creating a local Certificate Authority-signed key in your keystore

An alternative to the third-party CA-signed keys, if it intended *only* for internal use, is a locally signed key, also called "local CA-signed certificate." The DCM does not create self-signed certificates as such.

Perform the following tasks:

- 1. Create a local CA certificate if it is not yet created. To do this, perform the following tasks:
 - a. Click Create a Local CA Certificate.
 - b. The Create a Certificate Authority window opens. Select a key size of 1024.
 - c. Click Select a Certificate Store and select your keystore.

2. Click Install Local CA Certificate on Your PC. In the right panel, click Install certificate, as shown in Figure 6-57.



Figure 6-57 Instal Local CA Certificate on Your PC window

 Select the Work with Server and Client Certificates option and click Create, as shown in Figure 6-58.



Figure 6-58 Work with Server and Client Certificates window

4. In the Select a Certificate Authority window, select Local Certificate Authority (CA) and click Continue (Figure 6-59).



Figure 6-59 Selecting Local Certificate Authority

5. The Create Certificate window is displayed. Select a key size of **1024** and a certificate label, and complete the required fields, as shown in Figure 6-60. Click **Continue**.

| | | Digital Cer | tificate Manager | 0 IBM. |
|---|---|--|--|-------------|
| | Key size: Certificate label: Ce | 1024 v (bits) keylabel_selfsigned_1 rtificate Information | (required) | ^ |
| Select a Certificate Store Expand All Collapse All Fast Path Work with server and client certificates Work with CA certificates Work with CA certificates Work with certificate requests Work with CEL locations | Common name: Organization unit: Organization name: Locality or city: State or province: Country or region: | EKMCertificate MyCompany MyCity US (required) | (required) (required) (required) (required:minimum of 3 characters) | |
| Create Certificate Create New Certificate Store install Local CA Certificate on Your PC Manage Certificates New certificate Import certificate Export certificate Delete certificate A term A term | Note:Certificate exte (VPN). IP version 4 address Fully qualified dom: (host_name.domain_ E-mail address: (user_name@domain Continue Cance | Subj nsions are not necessary for Secure s: nin name: | ect Alternative Name Sockets Layer (SSL), but are recommended for Virtual Priva | ite Network |

Figure 6-60 Creating the certificate

The Certificate Created Successfully window is displayed (Figure 6-61). Click **OK**.



Figure 6-61 Certificate is created

6.6 Configuring Encryption Key Manager

Now, define to the EKM server where the keys and the information on the tape drives are stored. The KeyManagerConfig.properties file is only a sample configuration. Adapt it to point the EKM server to the keystore you created and the drive table file.

6.6.1 Editing the .properties file

Perform the following tasks to edit the .properties file:

1. From an i5/OS command line, type the WRKLNK command and go down to the KeyManagerConfig.properties file. Type 2 to edit the file, as shown in Figure 6-62.

```
Work with Object Links
Directory . . . :
                       /EKM
Type options, press Enter.
  2=Edit 3=Copy 4=Remove
                               5=Display
                                           7=Rename
                                                      8=Display attributes
  11=Change current directory ...
Opt
      Object link
                             Type
                                      Attribute
                                                   Text
      keystore_i.kdb
                             STMF
     keystore_i.RDB
                             STMF
     EKM.KDB
                             STMF
     EKM.RDB
                             STMF
2
      KeyManagerConfig.p >
                             STMF
                                                                         Bottom
Parameters or command
===>
F3=Exit F4=Prompt
                      F5=Refresh
                                   F9=Retrieve
                                                 F12=Cancel
                                                              F17=Position to
F22=Display entire field
                                   F23=More options
```



- 2. Figure 6-63 on page 181 shows the sample configuration file with the default values. Change some of the values and add some. Strictly respect the syntax and do not leave any trailing blanks. Do not use "\" in path names. They are interpreted by Java as escape characters. Use "/" instead.
 - Audit.handler.file.directory

Specify where you want EKM to store the audit log. This directory must exist before you start the EKM Admin console.

Admin.ssl.keystore.name
 Admin.ssl.truststore.name
 TransportListener.ssl.keystore.name
 TransportListener.ssl.truststore.name
 config.keystore.file

Specify the path and the file name of the keystore.

Admin.ssl.keystore.password
 Admin.ssl.truststore.password
 TransportListener.ssl.keystore.password
 TransportListener.ssl.truststore.password
 config.keystore.password

Specify the keystore password. You do not have to specify the password, but if you do not do it, you will be asked to enter it when you start the EKM server.

Config.drivetable.file.url

Specify the path and the file name where you want EKM to store the information on the drives that are known to EKM. The path must exist before starting the EKM Admin console. You can choose the file name yourself but it must have a .txt extension. It will be created by the EKM. The file path must be preceded by FILE://.

- debug.output.file

Specify the path and the file name of the debug file you want to create. The file must have a .log extension.

- drive.acceptUnknownDrives

Set this property to true if you want the EKM server to automatically add the tape drives to the EKM drive table when they contact EKM. If you decide against allowing the tape drives to be added automatically, which means that you will have to add the tape drives manually, set this value to false. (Refer to 6.6.4, "Adding the tape drives to the EKM drive table" on page 183.)

| Edit File: /EKM/KeuManagerConfig.properties |
|---|
| Becord : 1 of 49 bu 10 Column : 1 76 bu 126 |
| Control: |
| |
| CMD+1+2+3+4+5+6+7+8+9+9+8+9. |
| *********Beginning of data********** |
| # Note that the file is sorted by property name. EKM shutdown automatically |
| # reorders the values in the properties file. |
| Audit.event.outcome = success.failure |
| Audit.event.types = all |
| Audit.eventQueue.max = 0 |
| # Need to change the following directory value or create the directories |
| Audit.handler.file.directory = /EKM/auditlogs |
| Audit.handler.file.name = ekm_audit.log |
| Audit.handler.file.size = 10000 |
| # Need to change the following 2 pathnames to the correct pathnames for |
| # the keystores being used on your system |
| Admin.ssl.keystore.name = /EKM/EKM.kdb |
| Admin.ssl.truststore.name = /EKM/EKM.kdb |
| # Need to change the following pathname value or create the directories |
| config.drivetable.file.url = FILE:///EKM/drives/drivetable |
| # Need to change the following pathname to the correct pathname for |
| # the keystore being used on your system |
| |
| |
| rz=Save rz=Save/txit riz=txit riz=Services rio=Kepeat find fl/=Kepeat Change Fl9=Left F20=Kight |
| Figure 6-63 Sample properties file |

3. Save the changes to the KeyManagerConfig.properties file.

6.6.2 Starting the EKM Admin Console (command prompt)

This section describes how to start the EKM admin console from the QSHELL command line.

Important: Do not modify the KeyManagerConfig.properties file when the EKM Admin console is running. The changes will be lost. If you want to make changes, end the EKM Admin console first, and restart it after you have made the changes. The properties file is only read at startup and the values are stored in memory. When the EKM Admin console is ended, it writes the values in memory to the KeyManagerConfig.properties file in case any changes are made using the EKM commands when the admin/server is up. For information about EKM commands, refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide*, GA76-0418.

Perform the following tasks:

- 1. To start the EKM Admin console, enter the STRQSH command on an i5/OS command line.
- Start the EKM Admin console from the QSH command line by entering: strEKM -propfile fully_qualified_properties_file_name
- 3. The screen shown in Figure 6-64 opens. To show Help on the strEKM script, type: strEKM -h

| QSH Command Entry |
|--|
| 5 |
| · |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| ===> strEKM -propfile /EKM/KeuManagerConfig.properties |
| |
| |
| F3=Exit E6=Print E9=Retrieve E12=Disconnect |
| F13=Clear F17=Top F18=Bottom F21=CL command entry |
| |

Figure 6-64 QSH Command Entry screen

4. When the EKM Admin server is started, the # prompt is available, as shown in Figure 6-65.

| USH Command Entry |
|---|
| <pre>\$ > strEKM -propfile /EKM/KeyManagerConfig.properties Sep 7, 2006 11:29:06 AM com.ibm.keymanger.config.ConfigImpl get FINER: ENTRY Sep 7, 2006 11:29:06 AM com.ibm.keymanger.config.ConfigImpl get ALL: debug.output = simple_file Sep 7, 2006 11:29:06 AM com.ibm.keymanger.config.ConfigImpl get FINER: RETURN # ===></pre> |
| |
| |
| |
| F3=Exit F6=Print F9=Retrieve F12=Disconnect F13=Clear F17=Top F18=Bottom F21=CL command entry |

Figure 6-65 Start EKM Admin Console

6.6.3 Starting and stopping the EKM server

To start the EKM server, enter the following command from the QSH command entry (Figure 6-66):

strEKM -server -propfile fully_qualified_properties_file_name

To stop the EKM server, enter:

stopEKM

You can also run the server in a batch job. In that case, end the batch job to stop the server.



Figure 6-66 Starting the EKM server

6.6.4 Adding the tape drives to the EKM drive table

If you decide against allowing the tape drives to be added automatically, specify:

drive.acceptUnknownDrives = false

In such a situation, you add the tape drives manually before using EKM.

To add the tape drives to the EKM drive table, start the EKM Admin console and enter the following command from the # prompt for each drive:

adddrive -drivename drivename -rec1 alias1 -rec2 alias2

drivename is the serial number of the drive (for example, 000001365054). Note that the serial number must comprise 12 characters. Use leading zeroes.

-rec1 and -rec2 are the optional parameters. They are the default keys assigned to your drive in the event that the key requested for use with a cartridge loaded in your drive is not present in the keystore.

adddrive is only one of the available EKM commands. For more information about EKM commands, refer to *IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide*, GA76-0418.

6.7 Configuring your TS1120 tape drive for encryption

This section describes how to configure your TS1120 tape drive for encryption using the TS3500 Tape Library Specialist Web interface.

6.7.1 Defining the keystores to be used by the TS3500

To enable encryption, point the TS3500 tape library to where it can find the keystore or the "Key Manager" you created. When the TS1120 tape drive located in the library wants to write or read an encrypted tape, it requests keys from the keystore. All you have to do is point the tape library system to the key manager by adding its address:

1. Go to the IBM System Storage[™] Tape Library Specialist Web interface (Figure 6-67). For instructions for setting up the IBM System Storage Tape Library Specialist Web interface, refer to *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library: Operator Guide*, GA32-0560-01.

| IBM System Storage [™] TS3500 Tape Librar | |
|--|--|
| Work Items | Welcome Page |
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Manage Drives Manage Library Manage Ports | TS3500 Tape Library |
| Manage Access Service Library | The Specialist enables you to monitor library status and perform library operations from a remote location. Use the Work Items area on the left to navigate to available Specialist tasks. |
| Switch to Original Navigation | Manage Physical Library |
| | Manage Logical Library |
| | Advanced Library Management System is Enabled |
| | For more information, select the help icon 🔟 in the top right of the screen. |

Figure 6-67 IBM System Storage Tape Library Specialist Web interface

2. In the left panel of the tape library Web interface, select Manage Access \rightarrow Key Manager Addresses, as shown in Figure 6-68.

| Work Items | | Key Manager A | ddresses | [|
|--|--------|--------------------------------------|----------|---|
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Manage Drives | Refr | esh Last Refresh: 8/31/2006 20:42:42 | | L |
| Manage Library | | Select Action × Go | | |
| Manage Ports | | | | |
| Manage Access | Select | IP Address | Port | |
| Web Security | ۲ | 9.5.53.92 | 3801 | |
| SNMP Settings | 0 | 9.5.53.94 | 3801 | |
| SNMP Destinations SNMP System Data Key Manager Addresses Service Library | | | | |
| Switch to Original Navigation | | | | |

Figure 6-68 Key Manager Addresses

3. To add a key manager address, select **Create** in the Select Action menu, and click **Go** (Figure 6-69).

| Work Items | | | Key Manager A | Addresses | |
|---|--------|-------------------------|------------------|-----------|-----|
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Manage Drives | Refre | esh Last Refresh: 8/ | 31/2006 20:42:42 | | |
| Manage Library | | Select Action | ✓ Go | | |
| Manage Ports | Select | Select Action | IP Address | Po | ort |
| Web Security | • | Greate | | 3801 | |
| SNMP Settings SNMP Destinations SNMP System Data Key Manager Addresses | | gDelete Ping Address | | 3801 | |
| Service Library | | | | | |
| Switch to Original Navigation | | | | | |

Figure 6-69 Creating a key manager address

4. The Create Key Manager Address window opens. Enter the IP address (Port field must be prefilled) and click **Apply**, as shown in Figure 6-70.

| 🛎 Create Key Manager Address - Microsoft Internet Explorer | |
|--|---|
| Key Manager Create | ~ |
| Create a Key Manager Address | |
| | |
| IP Address 192.168.4.1 | |
| Port 3801 | |
| | |
| Apply Cancel | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | ~ |
| Uone Vocal Intranet | |

Figure 6-70 Key manager IP address

5. A confirmation window is displayed to confirm that the key manager IP address is added successfully (Figure 6-71).

| Success - Microsoft Internet Explorer | |
|---|-----------------|
| The Key Manager Address Change is complete. | <u>^</u> |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Class | |
| Close | |
| | |
| | |
| | ~ |
| Done Done | Second Intranet |

Figure 6-71 Key manager added

 To test the connection between the TS3500 tape library system and the keystore, select the key manager address and choose **Ping Address** in the Select Action menu, and click **Go** (Figure 6-72).

| IBM System Storage [™] TS3500 Tape Libr | rary | | | IBM. |
|--|-----------------------|--------------------|----------|------|
| Work Items | | Key Manager Ac | ddresses | ? |
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Manage Drives | Refresh Last Refresh: | 8/31/2006 20:46:08 | | |
| Manage Library | Select Action - | ¥ Go | | |
| → Manage Ports | Select Select Action | IP Address | Port | |
| Web Security | Ocreate Modify | | 3801 | |
| SNMP Settings | O gDelete | | 3801 | |
| SNMP Destinations SNMP System Data Key Manager Addresses | Ping Address | | | |
| Service Library | | | | |
| Switch to Original Navigation | | | | |

Figure 6-72 Verifying key manager connection

7. If the connection succeeds, a confirmation window is displayed (Figure 6-73).

| Success - Microsoft Internet Explorer | |
|--|-------|
| Key Manager Test | |
| The following frames successfully pinged requested address: Frame 2 | |
| Close | |
| | |
| | |
| a Done | vet 🛒 |

Figure 6-73 Verification of key manager connection successful

6.7.2 Enabling your tape drive for encryption

Perform the following tasks:

 In the left panel, select Manage Library → By Logical Library. This lists the logical libraries that have been defined in theTS3500 tape library. The last column shows encryption methods in use (Figure 6-74).

| IBM System Storage [™] TS3500 Tape Library | / | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|-----------------------|--|--|---|-----------------------------------|---|--|---|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Work Items | | | | | | Mana | ige Logica | l Lib | raries | | | |
| Welcome Page | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Manage Cartridges | Rofr | roch | | reeb: 0 | 124/0006 0 | 0.05.57 | | | | | | |
| Manage Drives | Ren | Con | Last Reli | resn. o | 31/2000 2 | 0.25.57 | | | | | | |
| Manago Librany | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| by Frame | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| by Logical Library | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Accessor | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Disable ALMS | | and the second second | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Virtual IO | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin | | ogios | llibrarios | - 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports | Total L | .ogica | al Libraries: | : 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access | Total L | .ogica | al Libraries Rename | : 5 | | v Go |) | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library | Total L | .ogica | al Libraries Rename Logical | : 5 | # Driv | ves Gc |) # Cartrid | Iges | # VIO S | Slots | Energy | Encryption |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library | Total L Sele | .ogica | Al Libraries Rename Logical Library | 5 Type | # Driv Dedicated | Ves Shared | # Cartrid Assigned | lges Max. | # VIO \$ Assigned | Slots Max. | Exports | Encryption Method |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library Switch to Original | Total L Sele | .ogica © ect | al Libraries: Rename Logical Library LTO-2 | 5 Type LTO | # Driv Dedicated 8 | ves Shared 0 | # Cartrid Assigned 16 | lges Max. 571 | # VIO S Assigned 0 | Slots Max. 10 | Exports | Encryption Method N/A |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Total L Sele | .ogica © ect | al Libraries Rename Logical Library LTO-2 JAG1 | Type LTO 3592 | # Driv Dedicated 8 6 | Goves Shared 0 0 | # Cartrid Assigned 16 28 | lges Max. 571 359 | # VIO S Assigned 0 0 | Slots Max. 10 16 | Exports Show Show | Encryption Method N/A N/A |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Total L Sele | .ogica IC | Rename Logical Library LTO-2 JAG1 LTO-1 | Type LTO 3592 LTO | # Drin Dedicated 8 6 8 | Ves Shared 0 0 0 | # Cartrid Assigned 16 28 16 | lges Max. 571 359 571 | # VIO S Assigned 0 0 0 | Slots Max. 10 16 10 | Exports Show Show Show | Encryption Method N/A N/A N/A |
| Virtual IO Date and Time 6-Character Volser Reportin Manage Ports Manage Access Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Total L Sele | ogica | Al Libraries: Rename Logical Library LTO-2 JAG1 LTO-1 LTO-3 | 5 Type LTO 3592 LTO LTO | # Driv Dedicated 8 6 8 4 | ves Shared 0 0 0 0 | # Cartrid Assigned 16 28 16 46 | lges Max. 571 359 571 571 | # VIO S Assigned 0 0 0 0 | Slots Max. 10 16 10 10 | Exports Show Show Show Show | Encryption Method N/A N/A N/A N/A |

Figure 6-74 Managing logical libraries

2. Select a tape that is capable of encryption, and select **Modify Encryption Method** from the Select Action menu. Click **Go** (Figure 6-75).

| | | | Man | age Logic | al Lib | raries | | | |
|--|--------------|-----------------------------------|------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|---------|----------------------|
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Data Cartridges Cleaning Cartridges I/O Station Cartridge Assignment Scratch Encryption Pu Insert Notification | Policy | Last Refresh: 8/31/2006 20:25 | 5:57 | 0 0 | | | | | |
| by Frame by Logical Library ccessor Displa ALMS | Total Logic: | al Libraries: 5 | - G | 5 | | | | | |
| Virtual IO Date and Time | Select | Select Action Rename Create | red | # Cartri Assigned | dges I Max. | # VIO S Assigned | Blots Max. | Exports | Encryption Method |
| 6-Character Voiser Re | | Remove | | 16 | 571 | 0 | 10 | Show | N/A |
| | | Maximum Cartridges | | 28 | 359 | 0 | 16 | Show | N/A |
| Maildue Access | | Hide/Show Queued Exports | | 16 | 571 | 0 | 10 | Show | N/A |
| | | Drive Accignment | | 46 | 571 | 0 | 10 | Show | N/A |

Figure 6-75 Modifying encryption method

3. The Encryption method window is displayed (Figure 6-76). Note that the default value is None, and that the four remaining parameters are for IBM Support use only.

Attention: Changing these values is *not* recommended.

| Encryption Method - Microso | ft Internet Explorer |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Encryption Method | ~ |
| Encryption Method None |) v |
| Advanced Encryption Setting | s (for Engineering Support use only) |
| Advanced Method | No Advanced Setting v |
| Scratch Cartridge Encryptio | n No Advanced Setting |
| Density Code | No Advanced Setting v |
| Key Path | No Advanced Setting v |
| Apply Cancel | |
| 🕘 Done | S Local intranet |

Figure 6-76 Encryption method

4. To change the encryption method, select **Library Managed** in the Encryption Method menu, as shown in Figure 6-77.

| Encryption Method - Mid | icrosoft Internet Explorer 🛛 📃 🗌 🔀 |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Encryption Method | |
| | |
| Encryption Method | None |
| | None Application-Managed System-Managed Library-Managed |
| Advanced Encryption Se | ettings (for Engineering Support use o |
| Advanced Method | No Advanced Setting v |
| Scratch Cartridge Encryption | No Advanced Setting |
| Density Code | No Advanced Setting ~ |
| Key Path | No Advanced Setting v |
| Apply Cancel | |
| C Done | Local intranet |
| Done | - Locar intrariet |

Figure 6-77 Changing encryption method

5. As soon as you change the encryption method to Library-Managed, a new field appears on the page, the key manager address selection (Figure 6-78). This is normal when you enable a tape drive for encryption; the tape drive has to know where to get its keys. By using this field, you can point the tape drive to the keystore addresses you selected earlier as described in 6.7.1, "Defining the keystores to be used by the TS3500" on page 184. After specifying the IP addresses of your choice, click **Apply** to confirm.

| encryption Method | Library-Managed v | | |
|--|---|---|----------------|
| | Select up to four IP addres | s | |
| | Select IP Address Por | t | |
| | 9.5.53.92 380 | 1 | |
| | 9.5.53.94 380 | 1 | |
| | | | |
| | | 1 | |
| | < | | |
| | < > | | |
| dvanced Encryption | Settings (for Engineering S | upport | use only) |
| dvanced Encryption | Settings (for Engineering S | upport | use only) |
| dvanced Encryption Advanced Method | Settings (for Engineering S | upport | use only) |
| dvanced Encryption Advanced Method Scratch Cartridge E | Settings (for Engineering S No Advanced Setti noryption No Advanced Setti | upport i ng v | use only) v |
| dvanced Encryption Advanced Method Scratch Cartridge E Density Code | Settings (for Engineering S No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti | upport i ng v ng | use only) |
| dvanced Encryption Advanced Method Scratch Cartridge E Density Code Key Path | Settings (for Engineering S No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti No Advanced Setti | upport in ng v ng v ng v ng v | use only) |

Figure 6-78 Library-managed encryption

6.7.3 Setting up a scratch encryption policy

In this last stage, define to the TS1120 tape drive the cartridges or "ranges" of cartridges that are eligible for encryption. This policy only applies to scratch tapes because you cannot mix nonencrypted and encrypted data on one cartridge.

Attention: This is another point where you must remember not to save the keys to the encrypted media. You must plan for the eligible tapes to be known as encryption-capable. Anyone using these encrypted tapes must understand the restore implications.

To set up a scratch encryption policy, perform the following tasks:

 In the left panel, select Manage Cartridges → Scratch Encryption Policy. Figure 6-79 on page 191 shows two "Volser" (volume serial) ranges of cartridges that are already defined. Select Create from the Select Action menu, and click Go.

| IBM System Storage™ TS3500 Tape Library | | | | | | and the second | | IBM. |
|--|--------|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| Work Items | | | | Scratch Encrypti | on Policy | | | ? |
| Welcome Page Manage Cartridges Data Cartridges Cleaning Cartridges I/O Station | Refr | esh Last Refres | h: 8/31/2006 | 20:50:05 | | | | |
| Cartridge Assignment Policy Scratch Encryption Policy | | Select Action | 1 🔻 Go | | | | | |
| Insert Notification | 0.1 | Mala an Danama | | Key 1 | | | Key 2 | 2 |
| 🗅 Manage Drives 🔍 | Select | Volser Ranges | Mode | Label | | Mode | | Label |
| 🗀 Manage Library | ۲ | J1R800- J1R804 | Clear Label | Tape_Sol_Tst_Shr_Pv | t_1024_Lbl_01 | Clear Label | Tape_Sol_Tst | Shr_Pvt_1024 |
| Manage Ports | 0 | JJX030- JJX034 | Clear Label | Tape_Sol_Tst_Shr_P | t_2048_Lbl_03 | Clear Label | Tape_Sol_Tst | Shr_Pvt_1024 |
| Manage Access | | | | | | | | |
| Service Library | | | | | | | | |
| Switch to Original Navigation | | | | | | | | |

Figure 6-79 Scratch encryption policy

2. The Scratch Encryption Policy window is displayed. You can select the Set All/Other Volsers check box, or define a range of cartridges to be used for encryption. Each scratch encryption policy requires that you specify two key labels (and key modes). A key label is only a pointer, a common name that enables the tape library and the keystore to identify which keys are to be used for this policy. The same key labels must exist in your keystore. The key mode defines how the keystore identifies the public/private keys used to *encrypt a data key*.

Possible values for key mode are:

| Default Label | The label is configured at the encryption key manager |
|---------------|---|
| Clear Label | The externally encrypted data key (EEDK) that is referenced by the specified key label |
| Hash Label | The EEDK that is referenced by a computer value that corresponds to the public key that is referenced by the specified key label |

Click **Apply** to encrypt all subsequent scratch tapes in the range ZYX100 - ZYX110 (Figure 6-80).

| Scratch Encryption Policy - | Microsoft Internet Explorer | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------|
| Scratch Encryption Policy | | _ |
| | | |
| Set All/Other Volsers | | |
| Volume Serial Number Start | ZYX100 | |
| Volume Serial Number End | ZYX110 | |
| Key Mode 1 | Clear Label 💌 | |
| Key Label 1 | keylabel1 | |
| | previously selected key labels | |
| | | |
| Key Mode 2 | Clear Label | |
| Key Label 2 | keylabel2 | |
| | previously selected key labels | |
| Apply Cancel | | |
| | | ~ |
| 🞒 Done | Second Intranet | : "; |

Figure 6-80 Scratch encryption policy definition

 To check whether your cartridges are being encrypted, select Manage Cartridges → Data Cartridges. Narrow your search by selecting a frame or a logical library. In this example, we selected only the encryption-enabled logical library (Figure 6-81). Click Search to display your selection of cartridges.

| IBM System Storage™ TS3500 Tape Libra | |
|--|---|
| | |
| Work Items | Cartridges |
| Welcome Page | |
| Manage Cartridges Data Cartridges Cleaning Cartridges | Refresh Last Refresh: 8/31/2006 21:03:19 |
| I/O Station Cartridge Assignment Policy Scratch Encryption Policy Insert Notification | Select a Frame OR Select a Logical Library |
| Manage Drives | |
| Manage Library | Sort By: Volume Serial |
| Manage Ports | |
| Manage Access | DOWNLOAD: Mount History(.csv) |
| Service Library | |
| Switch to Original | Select Volume Serial Logical Library Element Address Type Location(F=Frame, C=Column, F |
| Navigation | Please select a filter and/or sort options. Once complete, click Search. |

Figure 6-81 Data cartridges

4. The last column in the list shows whether a cartridge is encrypted (Figure 6-82).

| Work Items | | | | Cartri | dges | | |
|--|-------------------------|---|---|--|--|--|---|
| Welcome Page | | | | | 0 | | |
| Manage Cartridges Data Cartridges Cleaning Cartridges | Refresh | Last Refresh: 8/3 | 31/2006 2 1 | 1:03:56 | | | |
| I/O Station Cartridge Assignment Policy Scratch Encryption Policy Insert Notification | Select a F All Frame | rame OR Select | t a Logical 2e ❤ | l Library | | Cartridge F <u>J1R800JA</u> | Ranges <u>- JJX034JJ</u> |
| Manage Drives | | | | | | | |
| Manage Library | Sort By: | Volume Serial | ~ | Sear | -b | | |
| Manage Ports | | | | Searc | 511 | | |
| Manage Access | DOWNLOAD | D: Mount History(.csv) | | | | | |
| ~ | | | | | | | |
| Service Library | | | | | | | |
| Switch to Original | C C | Remove | ▼ Go | | | | |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove | ✓ Go Logical Library | Element Addres | s Type | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro | w) Encryption |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Volume Serial J1R800JA | Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 | s Type 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) | w) Encryption Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Volume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA | Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 | s Type 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) | W) Encryption Encrypted Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Volume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA | ✓ Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) | w) Encryption Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Nolume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA J1R803JA | ✓ Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 1034 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R31) | w) Encryption Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Nolume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA J1R803JA J1R803JA | Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 1034 1037 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R21) Slot(F3,C1,R25) | w) Encryption Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove Nolume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA J1R803JA J1R803JA J1R804JA JJX004JJ | Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 1034 1037 1039 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R21) Slot(F3,C1,R25) Slot(F3,C5,R38) | w) Encryption Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Encrypted Not Encrypted |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove > Volume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA J1R803JA J1R803JA J1R804JA JJX004JJ JJX030JJ | v Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 1034 1037 1039 1038 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R25) Slot(F3,C5,R38) Slot(F3,C5,R39) | |
| Service Library Switch to Original Navigation | Select | Remove > Volume Serial J1R800JA J1R801JA J1R802JA J1R803JA J1R803JA J1R804JA JJX004JJ JJX030JJ JJX031JJ | Go Logical Library JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 JAG2e 1 | Element Addres 1029 1035 1036 1034 1037 1039 1038 1030 | s Type 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 3592 | ▲ Location (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Ro Slot(F3,C1,R13) Slot(F3,C1,R30) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R29) Slot(F3,C1,R25) Slot(F3,C5,R38) Slot(F3,C5,R39) Slot(F3,C5,R40) | |

Figure 6-82 Working with data cartridges properties

If you set the Show Density parameter to yes on the library side, you can also tell whether a tape is encrypted by looking at the density type. A nonencrypted tape written on a 3592-E05 drive will show a density of *FMT3592A1. For an encrypted tape, the density is FMT3592A1E.

Note: Remember that the TS3500 library manages the encryption, *not* BRMS or the native i5/OS functions. Although the INZTAP DENSITY(FMT3592A1E) might look like it is working — you receive a message stating that the density has changed — in reality, *the density does not change*.

6.7.4 Rekeying an encrypted cartridge for use by another company

When you encrypt a cartridge, it can only be accessed internally. To send your cartridges off to another company and allow them to use the cartridges, rekey the cartridges so that the other company can decrypt the data using a different key. This way, you do not have to give your keys to the other company. Instead, you create a new key pair for use by the other company.

Perform the following tasks:

- 1. Select Manage Cartridges \rightarrow Data Cartridges, define your selection, and click Search.
- 2. Select the tape cartridge you want to rekey, select **ReKey Encryption** from the Select Action menu, and click **Go** (Figure 6-83).

| IBM System Storage™ TS3500 Tape Libra | ry | | | | | | E IEM |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| Work Items | | | | Cartri | dges | | F |
| Welcome Page | | | | | | | |
| 🛱 Manage Cartridges | | _ | | | | Contrideo De | |
| Data Cartridges | Select a F | rame | Select a Logic | al Library | | Carridge Ra | inges |
| Cleaning Cartridges | All Frames v OR | | | | <u>J1R800JA - JJX034JJ</u> | | |
| Cartridge Assignment Policy | 7 ur runio | | 0/1020 | | | | |
| Scratch Encryption Policy | | | | | | | |
| Insert Notification | Sort By: | Volume Seri | al 🗸 | Sear | ch | | |
| 🗀 Manage Drives | | | | | | | |
| Manage Library | DOWNLOAD | D: Mount Histor | y(.csv) | | | | |
| Manage Ports | | | | | | | |
| Manage Access | C C | ReKey End | ryption 🗸 G | 0 | | | |
| Service Library | | Select A | ction | | _ | ▲ Location | |
| | Select | Remove | iry | Element Addres | s Type | (F=Frame, C=Column, R=Row) | Encryption |
| Switch to Original | | Assign | 2e | 1029 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C1,R13) | Encrypted |
| Navigation | | Unassign | 2e | 1035 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C1,R30) | Encrypted |
| | | J1R802JA | JAG2e | 1036 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C1,R29) | Encrypted |
| | | J1R803JA | JAG2e | 1034 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C1,R31) | Encrypted |
| | | J1R804JA | JAG2e | 1037 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C1,R25) | Encrypted |
| | | JJX004JJ | JAG2e | 1039 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C5,R38) | Not Encrypted |
| | | JJX030JJ | JAG2e | 1038 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C5,R39) | Encrypted |
| | | JJX031JJ | JAG2e | 1030 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C5,R40) | Encrypted |
| | | JJX032JJ | JAG2e | 1031 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C6,R2) | Encrypted |
| | | JJX033JJ | JAG2e | 1032 | 3592 | Slot(F3,C6,R1) | Encrypted |
| < | | JJX034JJ | JAG2e | 258 | 3592 | Drive(F3,R8) | Encrypted |
| Done | | | | | | | .ocal intranet |

Figure 6-83 Selecting ReKey Encryption

3. The Rekey Encryption window opens. Enter the key modes and labels you want to use to rekey the cartridge, and click **Apply** (Figure 6-84 on page 194).

| ا 👏 | Rekey Encrypt | ion - Microsoft Internet Explorer | | | X |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|---|----|---|
| Ī | Rekey Encryp Modify Scratch | otion I Cartridges to Encrypt in Library-Managed Drives | | | ^ |
| | Volume Serial | JJX034 | | | |
| | Key Mode 1 | Default Label 🗸 | | | |
| | Key Label 1 | | | | |
| | | previously selected key labels | | | = |
| | | | | | |
| | Key Mode 2 | Default Label 🗸 | | | |
| | Key Label 2 | | | | |
| | | previously selected key labels | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | Apply Can | Cel | | ľ | ~ |
| < | | Ш | | >] | |
| ۱ | Done | S Local intrane | t | | |

Figure 6-84 Rekey Encryption window

Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this IBM Redbook.

IBM Redbooks

For information about ordering these publications, see "How to get IBM Redbooks" on page 196. Note that some of the documents referenced here may be available in softcopy only.

- IBM System i5, eServer i5, and iSeries Systems Builder IBM i5/OS Version 5 Release 4 -January 2006, SG24-2155
- Logical Partitions on System i5: A Guide to Planning and Configuring LPAR with HMC on System i, SG24-8000
- High-speed Link Loop Architecture for the IBM eServer iSeries Server: OS/400 Version 5 Release 2, REDP-3652

Other publications

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

 System i i5/OS and related software: Installing, upgrading, or deleting i5/OS and related software, Version 5 Release 4, SC41-5120

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/iseries/v5r4/topic/rzahc/rzahc.pdf

Operations Console Setup, SC41-5508-02

http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=pub1sc41550802

► OS/400 Backup and Recovery V5R4, SC41-5304

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/iseries/v5r4/topic/books/sc415304.pdf

► IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide

http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7001618

Online resources

These Web sites and URLs are also relevant as further information sources:

- Dynamic Logical Partitioning http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/lpar/
- Expansion unit conversions in a partitioned environment for 8xx and 270 iSeries server models

http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/migration/pdf/LPARexpansionupgrade
FINAL.pdf

- HSL Rules (High Availability and Clusters) http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/ha/systemdesign.html
- IBM CUII Home page http://w3.rchland.ibm.com/projects/WCII/cgi-bin/wciireq.pl
- IBM System i5 Benchmark Center http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/benchmark/cbc/index.html
- IBM Systems Workload Estimator http://www-304.ibm.com/jct01004c/systems/support/tools/estimator/index.html
- ► IBM eServer iSeries Information Center

http://www.iseries.ibm.com/infocenter

iSeries Memorandum to Users Release -- R530 (Preventive Service Planning)

http://www-912.ibm.com/s_dir/sline003.nsf/2d3aff1c6b4d6ce086256453000d971e/e832 6ca1d7b29aa486256eac005dc19f?OpenDocument

How to get IBM Redbooks

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks, Redpapers, Hints and Tips, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks or CD-ROMs, at this Web site:

ibm.com/redbooks

Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads

ibm.com/support

IBM Global Services

ibm.com/services

Index

Symbols

14-inch 2.5GB 12 14-inch, 13GB 12

Numerics

5250 console 91

Α

acceptUnknownDrives 140 ASMI 90

В

backup and recovery considerations 140

С

Capacity on Demand 91 CEC 91

D

data are encrypted by the host 138 define keystore 140

Ε

EKM 137 configure 140 server 140 encryption components 139 encryption methods 138 encryption-capable tape drive 138

F

FC 5592 139 FC 5596 139 FC 9592 139 FC 9596 139 Fibre Channel Disk Adapter 12 Fibre Channel Disk adapter 12 Fibre Channel Tape Adapter 12 Fibre Channel Tape adapter 12 FSIOP 9, 11

G

graphical user interface 2

Η

Hardware Management Console 3, 90 machine code 93

I

IBM 5250 emulator 97 IBM Encryption Key Manager 139 IBM Java 140 IBM Software Development Kit 140 IBM TotalStorage TS1120 137 IBM Workload Estimator 3 IBMKeyManagementServer 140 Integrated xSeries Server 12 IPCS 11

J

Java Runtime Environment 140 JCEKS type keystore 149

Κ

key management 150 KeyManagerConfig 140 keystore 140

L

LPAR Validation Tool 2 LVT 2

Ν

Neoware Connection Manager 101 Neoware Thin Client 97

0

operations console 90 overview of the System Planning Tool 2

Ρ

planning for tape encryption 140 PTF 92

R

Redbooks Web site 196 Contact us x RPQ 847102 12

S

sample configuration File 140 Sarbanes-Oxley 138 SDK 140 server firmware 92 update policy 93 service partition 92 service processor 91

| SPD feature c | ode | 5072 | 8 |
|---------------------|-----|----------------|---------|
| 1360 10 | | 5073 | 8 |
| 1379 10 | | 5074 | 12 |
| 1380 10 | | 5079 | 12 |
| 2609 8 | | 5082 | 8 |
| 2612 9 | | 5083 | 8 |
| 2017 9 | | 6112 | 0 11 |
| 2619 9 | | 6141 | 8 |
| 2620 9 | | 6146 | 11 |
| 2621 10 | | 6149 | 9 |
| 2623 9 | | 6153 | 9 |
| 2624 10 | | 6180 | 8 |
| 2626 9 | | 6181 | 9 |
| 2629 8 | | 6325 | 10 |
| 2644 11 | | 6368 | 10 |
| 2654 9 | | 6380 | 10 |
| 2665 9 | | 6390 | 10 |
| 2666 9 | | 6425 | 10 |
| 2686 8 | | 6485 | 10 |
| 2688 8 | | 6490 | 10 |
| 2695 8 | | 6501 | 12 |
| 2699 9 | | 6502 | 11 |
| 2745 11 | | 6512 | 11 |
| 2748 12 | | 6513 | 11 |
| 2757 12 | | 6517 | 11 |
| 2765 12 | | 6518 | 11 |
| 2700 12 | | 6532 | 11 |
| 2782 12 | | 6533 | 11 |
| 2790 12 | | 6534 | 11 |
| 2791 12 | | 6605 | 10 |
| 2792 12 | | 6606 | 10 |
| 2799 12 | | 6607 | 10 |
| 2810 9 | | 6616 | 9 |
| 2820 9 | | 6617 | 9 |
| 2892 12 | | 6618 | 9 |
| 2699 12 3584-D22 | 130 | 6652 | 10 |
| 3584-D22 | 139 | 6713 | 10 |
| 3584-L22 | 139 | 6714 | 10 |
| 3584-L23 | 139 | 6717 | 12 |
| 3592-E05 | 139 | 6718 | 12 |
| 4317 12 | | 6806 | 10 |
| 4318 12 | | 6807 | 10 |
| 4482 12 | | 6813 | 10 |
| 4483 12 | | 6817 | 12 |
| 4062 12 | | 0100 6824 | 12 |
| 4745 11 | | 6906 | 10 |
| 4748 12 | | 6907 | 10 |
| 4778 12 | | 8617 | 12 |
| 5044 8 | | 8664 | 10 |
| 5052 8 | | 8713 | 10 |
| 5055 8 | | 8714 | 10 |
| 5057 8 | | 8817 | 12 |
| 5058 8 | | 9748 | 12 |
| 5065 12 | | 9778 SCH DD | 12 |
| 0000 12 | | | |

sysplan file 2 system plan 2–3

Т

tape encryption 137 Thin Console 97 5250 emulation screen 98 customization settings 110 Tivoli Storage Manager 138 TS1120 137, 139 TS3500 tape library 138 system 139 twinax console 90

U

using EKM and TS1120 tape drive 138

W

WebSM 90 Workload Estimator 3



(0.2"spine) 0.17"<->0.473" 90<->249 pages IBM eServer iSeries Migration: A Guide to Upgrades and Migrations to IBM System i5




IBM eServer iSeries Migration

A Guide to Upgrades and Migrations to IBM System i5



Understand the considerations for upgrades to IBM System i5 in i5/OS V5R4

Learn how TS1120 hardware-based tape encryption works with i5/0S

Review Thin Console support for low-end System i5 without an HMC Planning an upgrade from an existing IBM AS/400e or IBM eServer iSeries server to a new model IBM System i5 can range from a simple disk migration to a complex task involving many components and OS upgrade steps. This IBM Redbook discusses the various topics that are involved in migrating to the new Peripheral Component Interconnect-X (PCI-X), and IBM POWER5 processor technology. We include upgrade scenarios to assist your planning.

IBM i5/OS V5R4 contains additional components, functions, and features, which this book discusses. The new features include the new Thin Console support for the IBM System i5 low-end platform. This book also discusses the new hardware-based tape encryption available with i5/OS V5R4 and the IBM TotalStorage TS1120 tape drive.

Whether you are an IBM Field Technical Support Specialist, business partner, or client, this book offers the guidance to plan your upgrade or migration to a new IBM System i5 environment. INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL SUPPORT ORGANIZATION

BUILDING TECHNICAL INFORMATION BASED ON PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

For more information: ibm.com/redbooks

SG24-7200-01

ISBN 0738489581